



Oxford
Grammar
for Schools **4**

Student's DVD-Rom

OXFORD

Oxford
Grammar 4
for Schools

Martin Moore

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade
mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2014

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2014

2018 2017 2016 2015 2014

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without
the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly
permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside
the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford
University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose
this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for
information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials
contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 455903 4

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by: Judy Brown pp.7, 16, 21, 39, 46, 71, 91, 100, 106, 124, 139,
145 (Ex 3), 159, 166; Heather Clarke pp.29 (Ex 8), 55, 75, 78 (Ex 1), 90, 123,
123 (Ex 1), 136, 145 (Prepositions of place), 149, 158; James Hart pp.26, 29 (Ex 10),
42, 58, 86, 98, 118, 155, 163; Sean Longcroft pp.18, 33, 48, 65, 85, 87, 112, 121,
142, 146, 152; Oxford University Press pp.107, 169; Andy Peters pp.6, 11, 15, 20,
24, 30, 35, 41, 45, 52, 57, 61, 73, 78 (Reported speech), 84, 89, 96, 103, 105, 110,
116, 120, 123 (desert island), 127, 132, 140, 144, 148, 153, 156; Jo Taylor pp.9, 38,
102, 107, 129

*We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following
photographs:* Alamy pp.94 (Jim Wileman), 154 (credit card/nobeastsofierce),
(chips/Viktor Fischer), (dictionary/D. Hurst), (swimming hat/Anton Starikov),
(keyboard/Zoonar/Igor Terekhov/Zoonar GmbH), 157 (funkyfood London/Paul
Williams), 159 (Tony French); Corbis p.143 (George Tiedemann/Historical);
Getty Images pp.47 (John Lund/Marc Romanelli/Blend Images), 60 (Bob Thomas/
Popperfoto), 70 (Andy Buchanan/AFP), 72 (Kyu Oh/E+), 131 (KidStock/Blend
Images); Royalty-free pp.17 (Ricardo Junqueira), 32 (kangaroo/Photodisc),
32 (tiger/Photodisc), 80 (Thinkstock), 154 (jam/John Foxx); Science Photo Library
p.28 (Detlev van Ravenswaay); Shutterstock pp.19 (Victor Torres), 23 (Gail
Johnson), 32 (gorilla/Eric Isselee), (penguin/Leksele), 34 (Nataiki), 44 (Josep Pena
Llorens), 64 (dotshock), 68 (Goodluz), 93 (Bigchen), 101 (Goodluz), 109 (woman/
hurricane), (traffic jam/Adisa), 135 (jabiru), 147 (r.nagy)

Introduction

Oxford Grammar for Schools helps students develop a detailed understanding of grammar form and use in context, and inspires them to have fun with English through personalized activities, games and role play. The grammar is introduced or revised through easy-to-read tables and illustrated presentations with clear examples, all level-appropriate. The exercises build from controlled activities up to more communicative and productive skills-based activities. In each unit there are several speaking activities where students work with each other to use English with improved accuracy and confidence. The extended writing activities also encourage students to use language in realistic situations.

Each unit begins with a 'Can do' statement, which summarizes what students will be able to achieve on completion of the unit. At the end of each unit is a self-evaluation table. Students should be encouraged to rate their progress in each exercise, which helps them to take responsibility for their own learning and also increases motivation.


At the end of the book there are five pages of extra information for the information gap activities, a reference section containing useful form tables, and an irregular verb list.

Students can use the *Oxford Grammar for Schools* series in class with any coursebook to support and reinforce their grammar study. The Teacher's Book includes all the answers and audio scripts. There are also tests for every Student's Book unit, and two review tests which can be used at the end of a school term or whenever appropriate.

Student's DVD-ROM

The Student's DVD-ROM includes all the exercises in the Student's Book, as well as all the audio recordings for the listening and pronunciation activities. Students can also access and print out extra interactive activities, giving them motivating additional practice for homework. The teacher can also use the DVD-ROM on an interactive whiteboard in class.

Key to the symbols

 0.0 (0.0 = track number)	Listening activity
	Speaking activity
	Game
	Extended writing activity
	Pronunciation activity
	Introductory exercise
	Moderately challenging exercise
	Most challenging exercise

A difficulty rating is given to each exercise. The scale of difficulty is relative to each unit, so there are exercises with one, two, and three stars in every unit.

Contents

1	Nouns, quantities and articles	Countable, uncountable and plural nouns Quantities: a/an/some ; container words Articles: the/a/an /no article	6
2	Some and any ; indefinite pronouns	Some/any/no ; requests and offers Indefinite pronouns: some-/any-/every-/no-	11
3	Quantifiers	Much, many, a lot of, a few, a little Too much, too many, (not) enough	15
4	Personal pronouns; impersonal there and it/they	Personal pronouns Impersonal it/they and there	20
5	Demonstratives and possessives	Demonstrative pronouns: this/that/these/those ; one/ones Possessive adjectives; possessive pronouns; possessive 's	24
Revision 1 Units 1–5			27
6	Present simple and continuous	Present simple and continuous contrast	30
7	Past simple	Past simple: regular verbs Past simple: be Past simple: irregular verbs Time expressions: in, last, yesterday, on, ago	35
8	Past continuous	Past continuous: time expressions Past continuous or past simple? When/while	41
9	Present perfect	Present perfect: time expressions (unfinished); gone vs been Present perfect with just, already, yet and still Present perfect with since and for	45
10	Present perfect and past simple	Present perfect and past simple contrast	52
11	Past perfect	Past perfect vs past simple; conjunctions when/by the time/ before/after/the first time	57
12	The future	Be going to + the infinitive Will + the infinitive Shall...? Present continuous for future Will vs going to	61
Revision 2 Units 6–12			67
13	To + the infinitive and the -ing form	To + the infinitive -ing form: go + -ing ; -ing as subject Verbs with to + the infinitive or -ing	73
14	Reported speech	Tense changes Pronoun changes Say vs tell Time and place references	78
Revision 3 Units 13–14			82
15	Can, could, be able to	Can, could, be able to : ability Can and could : permissions and requests	84
16	Must, have to, should, needn't	Must, have to : necessity and obligation Mustn't, don't have to, needn't : permission and obligation Should, must : advice and recommendation	89

Revision 4 Units 15–16			94
17	Question words	What, when, where, who, why, how What vs which Whose vs who's How + adjective/adverb Subject and object questions	96
18	Question tags	Pronunciation and meaning: checking information; helping conversation	103
19	Relative pronouns	Who, which, that: subject and object relative pronouns Relative clauses with when and where	105
20	Connectors	And, but, or Because, so, although When, while	110
Revision 5 Units 17–20			114
21	Prepositions of place	Zero conditional First conditional	116
22	Second conditional	Second conditional First vs second conditional	120
23	I wish	I wish + past simple I wish + would	123
Revision 6 Unit 21–23			125
24	Comparison: adjectives and adverbs	Comparative and superlative adjectives Not as ... as; less ... than Comparison of adverbs	127
25	Position: adjectives and adverbs	Position of adjectives Position of adverbs Too and enough	132
Revision 7 Units 24–25			138
26	Prepositions of time	At, in, on After, before, during, for By, from ... until	140
27	Prepositions of place and movement	In, at, on + place Prepositions of place Prepositions of movement	144
28	Expressions with prepositions	By, for, in, on, with	148
Revision 8 Units 26–28			151
29	Active and passive	Active vs passive Present simple passive By + agent	153
30	Past passive	Past simple passive	156
Revision 9 Units 29–30			158
Revision 10 All units			160
Extra information			168
Reference			173
Irregular verb list			176

1 Nouns, quantities and articles

I can use countable and uncountable nouns and articles.

Countable, uncountable and plural nouns



Countable nouns have singular and plural forms.

one ruler two rulers
one woman three women

Uncountable nouns only have a singular form. We cannot count them.

one homework two rices
waters water moneys money

Spelling rules

Most nouns: + **s**

pencil – pencils car – cars

Nouns ending in **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x**: + **-es**

glass – glasses box – boxes

Nouns ending in **-o**: + **-s**

piano – pianos radio – radios

There are two exceptions:

potato – potato**es** tomato – tomato**es**

Nouns ending in consonant + **-y**: **y** → **-ies**

strawberry – strawberr**ies** city – cit**ies**

But nouns ending in vowel + **-y**: + **-s**

toy – to**ys** day – da**ys**

Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe**: → **-ves**

leaf – leav**es** knife – kniv**es**

A few nouns have irregular plurals.

man → men

fish → fish

woman → women

mouse → mice

child → children

goose → geese

person → people

foot → feet

sheep → sheep

tooth → teeth

* 1 Write the words in the correct place.

apple burger cheese coffee egg fruit
grape oil orange pasta rice salt
sandwich toast vegetable water

Countable	Uncountable
apple	

* 2 1.1 Circle the correct answer. Then listen and check.

▶ I like fast car / **cars**.

1 Have you got any bread / breads?

2 I often eat grape / grapes for lunch.

3 Do you listen to music / musics in the car?

4 Tony doesn't enjoy exam / exams.

5 They don't understand the homework / homeworks.

6 Have you got any information / informations about the museum?

7 I can't find my money / moneys.

8 Lucy bought some T-shirt / T-shirts for her holiday.

9 He arrived late because of the traffic / traffics.

10 I offered him some fruit / fruits.

****3 Write the plural form if the noun is countable.**

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|-------|
| ▶ baby | <u>babies</u> | 7 petrol | _____ |
| ▶ rice | _____ | 8 person | _____ |
| 1 station | _____ | 9 advice | _____ |
| 2 knife | _____ | 10 tooth | _____ |
| 3 rain | _____ | 11 education | _____ |
| 4 party | _____ | 12 child | _____ |
| 5 money | _____ | 13 journey | _____ |
| 6 dress | _____ | 14 electricity | _____ |



****4 1.2 What are they talking about? Listen and number from 1-8.**



a _____



b _____



c _____



d 1



e _____



f _____



g _____



h _____

Quantities

We use **a** or **an** with singular countable nouns.
*I'd like **an** orange.*
*Have you got **a** phone?*

We use **a** before a consonant sound and **an** before a vowel sound.

- a** computer **a** house
- a** university (starts with /j/ consonant sound)
- an** apple **an** island
- an** hour (starts with /au/ vowel sound)

We don't usually use **a** or **an** with uncountable nouns.
*I'd like **a** cheese.*

We use **some** with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.

- We've got **some** homework tonight.*
- They need **some** books.*

If we want to count uncountable nouns, we sometimes use a word for a container (**bottle**, **cup**) or quantity (**kilo**, **litre**) with **of**. See page 173 for a list of words.

****5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. You can use words more than once.**

a an a cup a kilo some

- ▶ I'd like to listen to some music.
- 1 My cousins live in _____ apartment.
- 2 Please put _____ butter on my sandwiches.
- 3 Can you buy me _____ of cheese?
- 4 Bill has got _____ old watch.
- 5 I'd like _____ water.
- 6 Mrs Jackson is _____ science teacher.
- 7 Would you like _____ of tea?
- 8 The police officer wants _____ information about the accident.
- 9 That's _____ long email.
- 10 They need _____ new equipment for the gym.

****6 Match the beginnings and ends of the sentences.**

- ▶ Have you got a bag of d ?
- 1 Let's get her a box of _____.
- 2 Check in the fridge. I don't think we've got any _____.
- 3 Can you get me an _____?
- 4 I need two packets of _____.
- 5 There isn't any _____.

- a milk
- b biscuits
- c chocolates
- d flour
- e oil
- f apple

Articles: *the, a/an* or no article

A/an

We use **a/an** when we talk about something and we don't know which one, or it isn't important which one.

*I'd like **a** sandwich, please.
What sort would you like? We've got cheese or chicken.*

*Have you got **a** laptop? (= any laptop. The speaker doesn't know which one.)*

We use **a/an** when we talk about something for the first time.

*She's got **a** bicycle. **The** bicycle is blue.*

We also use **a/an** when we are talking about someone's job and when we mean 'one'.

*He's **an** actor. She's **a** teacher.
a hundred people **an** hour*

The

We use **the** when we talk about something and the speaker and the listener know which one we are talking about.

*Would you like **the** cheese or **the** chicken sandwich?
Could I have **the** cheese sandwich, please?*

*Did you bring **the** laptop? (= The speaker and the listener both know which laptop they are talking about.)*

We use **the** when we talk about something for the second time.

*She's got a bicycle. **The** bicycle is blue.*

We also use **the** before ordinal numbers in dates, especially when we are speaking.

***the** third of January **the** tenth of May*

We use **the** when we talk about musical instruments.

*I play **the** piano. She plays **the** guitar.*

No article

In some cases, we do not use **a/an** or **the** with a noun.

We do not use articles with plural nouns or uncountable nouns in general, when we mean 'all'.

***Fruit** is good for you. ~~The fruit~~ is good for you.
Nurses work in hospitals. ~~The nurses~~ work in hospitals.
Homework is important.*

We do not use articles with names of people, cities, most countries, streets, languages or school subjects.

***Emily** lives in **Australia**.
My school is on **Oaktree Road**. My school is on ~~the Oaktree Road~~.
I speak **Russian**. I speak ~~the Russian~~. She understands **Arabic**.
I study **maths**. I study ~~the maths~~. I enjoy **physics**.*

*7 Complete the sentences to describe these jobs.

architect doctor dentist farmer hairdresser mechanic
waiter police officer shop assistant

- ▶ Doctors _____ help sick people to get better.
- 1 _____ repair cars and lorries.
- 2 _____ cut people's hair.
- 3 _____ grow food and look after animals.
- 4 _____ catch criminals and protect people.
- 5 _____ serve food and drinks in restaurants.
- 6 _____ design houses and other buildings.
- 7 _____ sell products in shops.
- 8 _____ look after people's teeth.

***8** **1.3** Read the information, then listen and repeat the words.



A, an and the are normally not stressed. They have 'weak' vowel sounds.	
a = /ə/ before a consonant sound	a concert a postcard
an = /ən/ before a vowel sound	an actor an exam
the = /ðə/ before a consonant sound	the market the radio the university
the = /ði/ before a vowel sound	the airport the umbrella

***9** **1.4** Tick (✓) the correct sound. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.



- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ ___ new coat
/ə/ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> /ən/ <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 ___ amazing game
/ə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ən/ <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 ___ easy question
/ə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ən/ <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 ___ important point
/ðə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ði/ <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 ___ first prize
/ðə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ði/ <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 ___ small problem
/ə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ən/ <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 ___ brilliant film
/ə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ən/ <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 ___ usual song
/ðə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ði/ <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 ___ old school
/ðə/ <input type="checkbox"/> /ði/ <input type="checkbox"/> | |

***10** Circle the correct word.



- ▶ 'I'd like **a** / **the** drink.' 'Water or juice?'
- 'There are some books and a magazine.'
'Can I read **a** / **the** magazine?'
 - My dad is **an** / **the** engineer.
 - The fridge is in **a** / **the** kitchen.
 - 'Can I borrow **a** / **the** pen?' 'Yes. Would you like blue or black?'
 - 'Is there **a** / **the** computer in your classroom?'
'No, there isn't.'
 - 'Can I have **a** / **the** banana?' 'Sorry. That banana is for your dad.'
 - 'I'm reading a new book.' 'What is **a** / **the** book about?'
 - 'Where is **a** / **the** car?' 'It's over there.'
 - 'How long is the journey?' '**An** / **The** hour and fifteen minutes.'
 - I don't know **an** / **the** answer to this question.

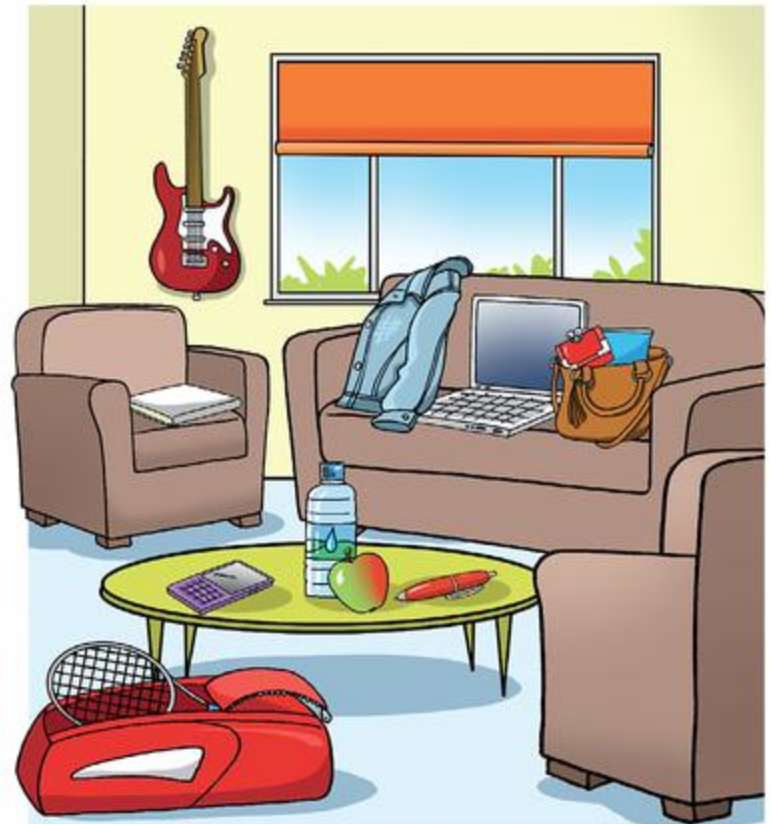
***11** **GAME** Look at the picture below for one minute. Cover the picture, then ask and answer questions about these things with your partner.

apple banana brown bag blue book
bottle of water cat computer guitar
jacket lamp red bag red pen phone
purse television tennis racket white book

Is there an apple?

Yes, there is an apple.
The apple is on the table.
Is there a banana?

No, there isn't a banana.



***12** **1.5** Number the sentences from 1 to 6. Then listen and check.



- ___ On the desk is a computer and next to it is a lamp.
- ___ There is a big bedroom and a small bedroom.
- ___ The computer has a webcam.
- 1 My house has got two bedrooms.
- ___ I use the webcam when I talk to my cousin in Australia.
- ___ The small bedroom belongs to me and it has got a small bed, a desk and a wardrobe.

13 Complete the sentences with *the* or – (no article).

- ▶ We normally eat _____ pasta twice a week.
- 1 The summer holiday starts on _____ tenth of July.
- 2 We make _____ paper from _____ wood.
- 3 Don't look directly at _____ sun. It's dangerous.
- 4 Was _____ fish good yesterday?
- 5 Mike speaks _____ German and _____ Turkish.
- 6 We have _____ science at eleven o'clock on Mondays.
- 7 Which shoes do you prefer? I like _____ red ones.
- 8 Jill plays _____ piano beautifully.
- 9 Mary lives on _____ Bridge Road.
- 10 Do you have _____ sugar in your coffee?

14 **1.6** Listen and complete the table.

Use *a, an, the* or – (no article).

Date of birth	<u>the seventh</u> of August
Address	_____ Avenue
Parents' jobs	father is _____ mother is _____
Favourite subjects	_____ _____ _____
Musical instrument	plays _____
Future plans	to be _____

15 Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions and write the information in the table.

Date of birth	
Address	
Parents' jobs	
Favourite subjects	
Musical instrument	
Future plans	

When were you born, Vicky?

On the twelfth of September.

16 Write about your partner, using the information from exercise 14.

Vicky was born on the twelfth of September.
She lives at ...

17 **1.7** Complete the dialogue with *a, an, some, the* or – (no article). Then listen and check.

- Henry How are you, Paul?
Paul I've got an exam next week, so I'm a bit nervous.
Henry You aren't normally nervous.
Paul I know, but I want to become ¹ _____ doctor, so ² _____ exam is very important.
Henry Really?
Paul Yes, it's the most important subject for ³ _____ doctors.
Henry So, are you studying hard?
Paul Yes. I'm doing ⁴ _____ revision at the moment. But I've got ⁵ _____ problem. My cousins from ⁶ _____ Australia are going to be here for a week and I want to spend some time with them.
Henry When do they arrive?
Paul On ⁷ _____ seventh. The day before ⁸ _____ exam. What do you think? Are ⁹ _____ exams more important than ¹⁰ _____ families?
Henry That's difficult. You need to talk to your parents.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			

2 Some and any; indefinite pronouns

I can use *some*, *any* and indefinite pronouns.

Some and any



We use **some** and **any** with uncountable nouns (*bread, money*) or plural countable nouns (*apples, shoes*). (We use **a/an** with singular countable nouns.)

We normally use **some** in affirmative sentences, and **any** in negative sentences and questions.

*I'd like **some** chips.*

*There isn't **any** bread.*

*Have you got **any** homework?*

But we can use **some** in questions if we are making a request or an offer.

*Can I have **some** water?*

*Would you like **some** help?*

We can sometimes use **any** in affirmative sentences, to mean 'it doesn't matter which'.

*'Which bus do I take?' 'You can take **any** bus. They all go to the town centre.'*

We sometimes use **no** for emphasis instead of **not ... any**.

*There isn't **any** bread left. → There's **no** bread left!*

* 1 Circle the correct word.



- ▶ I've got **any** / **some** water in my bag.
- 1 There aren't **any** / **some** computers in this room.
- 2 My mum eats **an** / **some** egg for breakfast.
- 3 There aren't **any** / **some** tomatoes in our fridge.
- 4 Be careful. There's **any** / **some** ice on the road.
- 5 I haven't got **a** / **any** pen. Can you lend me one?
- 6 My dad doesn't do **any** / **some** work at the weekends.
- 7 I've downloaded **a** / **some** new music onto my iPod.
- 8 Our teacher gave us **any** / **some** good advice before the exam.
- 9 I would like **any** / **some** fruit for lunch.
- 10 I haven't got **a** / **any** money in my pocket.

* 2 Read the answers and write the questions.

- ▶ Is there any milk in the fridge?
Yes, there is some milk in the fridge.
- 1 _____?
Yes, please. I'd like some coffee.
- 2 _____?
No. They haven't got any money.
- 3 _____?
No. There aren't any fish in the lake.
- 4 _____?
Sure. You can have some paper.
- 5 _____?
Yes. She's got some new friends.
- 6 _____?
Yes. There are some empty tables.
- 7 _____?
No, sorry. You can't have any ice cream.
- 8 _____?
No, thanks. I wouldn't like any lemonade.

3 Write the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use *no*.

- ▶ There isn't any salt in my pasta.
There's no salt in my pasta.
- He hasn't got any equipment.

 - There weren't any buses yesterday.


 - There isn't any water in the pool.

 - We haven't got any time for shopping.

 - I haven't got any minutes on my phone.


4 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ I need to go to the shops. **We've** / **We haven't** got any bread.
- 'Which film should we watch?'
'You **can** / **can't** choose any DVD. I don't mind.'
 - You **can** / **can't** have any sandwich. They all cost the same.
 - I can't make a cake. There **are** / **aren't** any eggs.
 - He's very unhealthy. He **eats** / **doesn't eat** any vegetables.
 - 'Where can I get that book?'
'It's easy. You **can** / **can't** buy it in any bookshop.'
 - There's** / **There isn't** any time to have breakfast. You're late for school.
 - She's got** / **She hasn't got** any interest in football, but she likes basketball.
 - Ask** / **Don't ask** me any question and I will answer it.


5  Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use *a, an, any, some* or *no* at least once.

apple cheese coffee soup eggs
homework information jacket money
knives plates trainers sugar

- ▶ Can I have some information about train times?
- Have you got _____ to wear for the tennis lesson?
 - There are _____ and forks on the table.
 - We haven't got _____ so we can't buy the tickets.
 - 'Is there _____ in your lunchbox?' 'Yes, a nice red juicy one.'
 - Shall I make you _____ sandwiches?
 - Are there _____? I want to make an omelette.
 - There's _____ in this drink. It's healthy.
 - Would you like _____ for lunch? It's cold today.
 - Have you got _____? You have school tomorrow.
 - Put on _____. It's raining.

6  **2.1** Complete the dialogue with *some, any, a, an, or no*. Then listen and check.

- Mum: We've got some friends coming here for dinner tonight.
- Oscar: Would you like ¹_____ help?
- Mum: Yes, please. I'm making spaghetti but there's ²_____ pasta in the cupboard.
- Oscar: OK. I'll go to the supermarket and buy ³_____ spaghetti. Do we need ⁴_____ other food?
- Mum: Let's think. I've got ⁵_____ meat, ⁶_____ tomatoes and ⁷_____ onion. So we don't need ⁸_____ more food. But we haven't got ⁹_____ drinks.
- Oscar: OK. I'll get ¹⁰_____ juice. What type would you like?
- Mum: Get ¹¹_____ type of juice. I don't mind.
- Oscar: OK. I'm going to Fred's house first and then I'll go to the supermarket.
- Mum: There's ¹²_____ time to go to Fred's house. I need those things immediately.
- Oscar: OK.

7  Work in pairs. Read the instructions and write a dialogue. Use *some, any, a* and *an*. Act out the dialogue with your partner.

- Student A: Say you're making dinner.
- Student B: Offer to help.
- Student A: Ask student B to go to the shop and buy food.
- Student B: Ask student A what they need.
- Student A: Say you have meat, peppers and onions but you don't have carrots or rice.
- Student B: Say you will get carrots and rice; ask if student A has drinks.
- Student A: Say you haven't got cola; ask student B to buy cola.
- Student B: Say you will buy cola.

I'm making dinner now.

Would you like some help?

Indefinite pronouns

We use indefinite pronouns when we talk about an unknown thing (**something**), person (**someone**, **somebody**) or place (**somewhere**).

*There's **someone** at the door. I don't know who it is.*

*Did you do **anything** on Sunday?*

*I can't find it **anywhere**.*

some-	any-	every-	no-
someone somebody	anyone anybody	everyone everybody	no one nobody
something	anything	everything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	everywhere	nowhere

We use pronouns with **some-** in affirmative sentences and pronouns with **any-** in negative sentences and questions. See page 11 for the rules.

-one and **-body** have the same meaning.
Someone/Somebody wants to talk to you.

We use a singular verb with **every-** and **no-**.
Is everything OK?

No one enjoys exams.

We normally use only one negative word.
*We **didn't** see anything. We ~~didn't~~ see **nothing**.*
*No one said anything. ~~No one~~ said **nothing**.*

* 8 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ I can't find my pen **anything** / **anywhere**.
- 1 We'd like **something** / **someone** to drink.
- 2 **Everyone** / **Everywhere** is looking at us.
- 3 I'm bored. There's **nothing** / **no one** on TV.
- 4 Can **anything** / **anybody** answer this question?
- 5 They want to go **something** / **somewhere** in Europe for their holidays.
- 6 I don't like exams. I always forget **everything** / **everyone**.
- 7 All the cafés are closed. There's **nowhere** / **nobody** to eat.
- 8 Be quiet! Don't say **anything** / **anyone**.
- 9 Can **someone** / **somewhere** close the window, please?
- 10 It wasn't funny. **Nobody** / **Nothing** laughed.

* 9 2.2 Complete the words with *some-, any-, or no-*. Then listen and check.

- ▶ *Some*one is talking to your dad. Who is it?
- 1 He's really lazy. He didn't do _____thing yesterday.
- 2 _____body enjoyed the film. It was terrible.
- 3 'There's _____thing on the roof of the house!' 'It's a cat!'
- 4 I went to Pat's house but there wasn't _____one there.
- 5 My town is boring. There's _____where to go in the evening.
- 6 'I can hear _____body's phone.' 'It's mine. Thanks!'
- 7 'How much does it cost?' '_____thing. It's free!'
- 8 _____one can do that. It's easy.
- 9 Can we go _____where quiet?
- 10 'I don't like sport, books or computer games.' 'Do you like _____thing?'

* 10 2.3 Listen to the interviews with Gemma and John and complete the table with names and words from the box.

in another town basketball dance fishing
flute football golf painting piano
at a sports centre swimming tennis

	Gemma's family	John's family
Who does what sport?	Gemma - basketball	
Where?		
Who plays what instrument?		
Other activities?		


* 11 Complete these questions with indefinite pronouns. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- Does _____ in your family do sport?
- Is there _____ to do sport near your house?
- Does _____ in your family play a musical instrument?
- Does anyone do _____ else?

12 **2.4** Complete the dialogue with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

anything anywhere everyone everything
nothing someone something somewhere

- May** Hi, Jill. How was your holiday? Did you go anywhere nice?
- Jill** Yes, we went to Fethiye in Turkey.
- May** How was it?
- Jill** ¹_____ was perfect. The weather was brilliant, the people were friendly and the hotel was nice.
- May** Did you do ²_____ interesting?
- Jill** At the start of the week we were really tired, so we did ³_____. We just sat by the pool. Then ⁴_____ told us that we could hire a boat, so we went sailing every day.
- May** That sounds lovely. And what was the food like?
- Jill** It was great. My favourite was ⁵_____ called Piliç Dolma. You make it with chicken and spices. It was delicious.
- May** So did ⁶_____ enjoy the holiday?
- Jill** Yes. We all loved it. But I don't think we'll go back. My parents prefer to go ⁷_____ different every year.

13  Write a letter about a bad holiday. Use the phrases below, with indefinite pronouns. Invent other information.

_____ was terrible

_____ was unfriendly

stayed _____ old and uncomfortable

didn't do _____ exciting

there was _____ interesting to visit

didn't meet _____ nice

ate _____ bad

_____ enjoyed it

I was on holiday last week. Everything was terrible.

14 **GAME** Say a sentence using an indefinite pronoun. Your partner guesses if it's true or false.

Someone in my family has green eyes.

I think that's false. I don't think anyone in your family has green eyes.







There's nothing in my pocket.

I think that's true. There's nothing in your pocket.

15 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Everyone was / were very tired.
- 1 I saw **anybody** / **somebody** famous yesterday.
- 2 **There's** / **There are** nothing in the cupboard.
- 3 She ate a / **some** bread and cheese.
- 4 We went **something** / **somewhere** very interesting.
- 5 They **didn't find** / **found** nothing under the chair.
- 6 He's funny. **Anyone** / **Everyone** likes him.
- 7 Can I have **any** / **some** salt, please?
- 8 Don't phone **anyone** / **anything** after 10 p.m.
- 9 Everything **is** / **are** very expensive.
- 10 I've / I haven't got no money!

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

		 	  
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			

3 Quantifiers

I can talk about quantity.

Much, many, a lot of, a few, a little



	Uncountable nouns	Countable nouns
Affirmative	a lot of / lots of a little	a lot of / lots of a few
Negative	not much	not many
Questions	much	many

We use **much, many, a lot of, a few** and **a little** to talk about quantity.

We use **a lot of** or **lots of** to mean a large quantity. We use them in affirmative sentences (except in formal written English, where we can use, for example, **a (large) number of**).

We've got a lot of cafés in our town.

We normally use **much** and **many** in negative sentences and questions.

She hasn't got much money.

Do you watch many films?

How much milk do you drink?

We use **a lot of** or **lots of** with countable and uncountable nouns. We use singular verbs with uncountable nouns and plural verbs with countable nouns.

There's lots of food to eat.

There are a lot of pictures in this book.

We use **a little** and **a few** to mean a small quantity. We use them in affirmative sentences and requests or offers.

I need a little help with my homework.

Would you like a few chips?

We can sometimes use quantifiers without nouns, when it is clear what we mean.

'Is there much bread left?' 'No. Not much.'

'How many people were at the concert?' 'A lot.'

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Lots of my friends live / lives near my school.
- 1 There **is** / **are** a lot of lemonade in your fridge.
- 2 There **is** / **are** a lot of dirty socks in your bedroom.
- 3 A lot of their music **is** / **are** very loud.
- 4 Lots of famous footballers **drive** / **drives** fast cars.
- 5 There **was** / **were** lots of rain yesterday.
- 6 A lot of children **study** / **studies** English.
- 7 A lot of information about computers **is** / **are** difficult to understand.
- 8 There **is** / **are** lots of kangaroos in Australia.
- 9 Lots of coffee **come** / **comes** from Africa.
- 10 There **was** / **were** a lot of biscuits in the cupboard.

* 2 3.1 Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*. Then listen and check.

- ▶ We haven't got much coffee.
- 1 There weren't _____ cars in the car park.
- 2 Do you get _____ snow in your country?
- 3 I don't need _____ money.
- 4 Did _____ people go swimming yesterday?
- 5 There aren't _____ things to do here.
- 6 'Do they speak French?' 'No. Not _____.'
- 7 They didn't eat _____ cake.
- 8 There aren't _____ trees in this park.
- 9 Did your teacher give you _____ advice about the exam?
- 10 I can't see _____ boats on the sea.

****3 Write questions with you and much or many.**

- ▶ spend / time on the internet
Do you spend much time on the internet?
- 1 play / football _____?
- 2 have got / cousins _____?
- 3 do / homework _____?
- 4 have got / computers at your school _____?

- 5 send / text messages _____?
- 6 know / people from other countries _____?
- 7 eat / fast food _____?
- 8 have got / money in your pocket _____?

****4 Ask and answer questions from exercise 3.**

Do you spend much time on the internet?

Yes. I spend a lot of time on the internet.

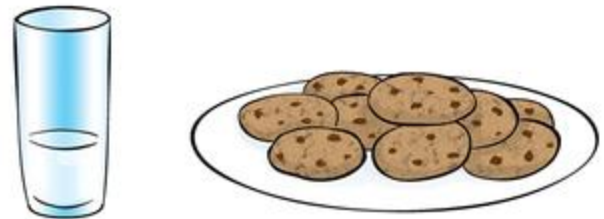
****5 Rewrite negative sentences as affirmative, and affirmative sentences as negative.**

- ▶ They haven't got many books.
They've got a lot of books.
- ▶ There's a lot of work to do.
There isn't much work to do.
- 1 There are lots of mountains in this area.
_____ mountains in this area.
- 2 We haven't got much time.
_____ time.
- 3 This car uses a lot of petrol.
_____ petrol.
- 4 Vicky has got lots of friends.
_____ friends.
- 5 There weren't many difficult questions.
_____ difficult questions.
- 6 She watches a lot of television.
_____ television.
- 7 A lot of children enjoy cooking.
_____ children enjoy cooking.
- 8 There isn't much sugar in this coffee.
_____ sugar in this coffee.
- 9 There's a lot of snow here at the moment.
_____ snow here at the moment.

****6 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a few, a little or a lot of.**



- ▶ There's a lot of snow.
- 1 There are _____ cars.



- 2 There's _____ milk.
- 3 There are _____ biscuits.



- 4 There's _____ work.
- 5 There are _____ people.



- 6 There are _____ children.
- 7 There's _____ water.


****7** Complete the text with words from the box.

lots of much a few a few some some
many little a lot of

Mum, I need a little help for ▶ a few minutes. I've got ¹ _____ packing to do and there isn't ² _____ time before the next bus. Please could you help me pack my shirts? I need to take ³ _____ T-shirts for two weeks, but I only need ⁴ _____ jumpers.


****8** **3.2** Listen to Katy talking about what she eats and drinks. Complete the table with *not much*, *not many*, *a lot of*, *a few*, *a little*, *no*.

<i>not much</i>	breakfast		potatoes
	orange juice		biscuits
	toast		fruit
	meat		water
	chicken		tea
	fish		coffee
	pasta		fizzy drinks
	rice		

****9**  Read the questions. Then write about the things you eat and drink. Answer all the questions.

- Do you have much breakfast?
- Do you eat much meat or fish?
- Do you prefer pasta, rice or potatoes?
- Do you eat many sweet things (biscuits, cake, etc.)?
- Do you eat much fruit? Do you eat many vegetables?
- What do you drink?

I have a lot of breakfast. I eat a lot of toast with jam, a little yoghurt, a few pieces of fruit, and I drink lots of tea.

****10**  Ask and answer the questions in exercise 9 with a partner.

Do you have much breakfast?

I have a lot of breakfast. I eat a lot of toast with jam, a little yoghurt, a few pieces of fruit, and I drink lots of tea.



Too much, too many and enough

We use **too much** and **too many** with nouns to say that there is a bigger quantity than we want or need.
The bus is going to be late.
*There's **too much** traffic.*

We use **too much** with uncountable nouns and **too many** with countable nouns. We use them in affirmative sentences.
*You put **too much** sugar in my coffee.*
*There are **too many** books. I can't carry them all.*

We use **enough** to say that there is the correct quantity. We use **not enough** to say that there is a smaller quantity than we want or need – it is the opposite of **too much/many**. We use **enough** with uncountable and countable nouns.

*'It costs £25. Have you got **enough** money?' 'Yes. I've got £30.'*
*'Can I sit down?' 'I'm sorry. There aren't **enough** chairs.'*

We can sometimes use **too much/many** and **(not) enough** without nouns, when it is clear what we mean.

*'Here's some cake.' 'That's **too much**. I can't eat all that.'*
*'Would you like some more coffee?' 'No, thank you. I've had **enough**.'*

We can also use **too** and **enough** with adjectives. See Unit 25.

***11** Look at the pictures. Circle the correct option.



► There's enough / isn't enough food.



3 There's enough / isn't enough snow.



1 There are enough / aren't enough fingers.



4 There's enough / isn't enough money.



2 There are enough / aren't enough computers.



5 There are enough / aren't enough players.

***12** Complete the sentences with *too much*, *too many*, *enough* or *not enough*.

- We can't get on the bus. There are too many people.
- 1 There's _____ luggage. You can't take all that.
 - 2 'Can I make some coffee?' 'No, there's _____ time. We have to leave immediately.'
 - 3 'Would you like more chips?' 'No, thanks. I've got _____!'
 - 4 There's _____ traffic. We're going to be late.
 - 5 'Where are we meeting? And what time?' 'I don't know. There's _____ information.'
 - 6 'I'm really hot!' 'You're wearing _____ clothes.'
 - 7 'It's a long way to London.' 'Don't worry. We've got _____ petrol.'
 - 8 There are _____ advertisements at the cinema. You have to wait a long time for the film to start.
 - 9 'Does Jill do _____ homework?' 'Yes. She's a very good student.'
 - 10 He's feeling sick. He drank _____ cola.

***13** **3.3** Listen to Emma talking about environmental problems. Write sentences about her opinions, using *too much*, *too many* or *not enough*.

- There's not enough clean air.
- 1 _____ pollution.
 - 2 _____ cars and lorries.
 - 3 _____ bicycles.
 - 4 _____ trees.
 - 5 _____ electricity.
 - 6 _____ televisions and computers.
 - 7 _____ solar power.

***14 GAME**

Student A says a sentence using *too much*, *too many* or *not enough*. Student B changes the sentence to give the opposite meaning. Use the words in the box or your own ideas.

buses cafés chips clothes exams films
 food homework money noise paper
 shoes shops snow time traffic

My sister has got too many shoes.

My sister hasn't got enough shoes.

I haven't got enough paper.

I've got too much paper.

***15** Some of the bold words are incorrect. Write the correct words or tick (✓) if the words are correct.



There's a lot of good things about my town. First, it's a beautiful place, with **lots of** parks and trees. There are also ¹**a lot** mountains near the town, and in winter you can see ²**much** snow. Second, there isn't ³**enough** traffic, so it's quiet and we don't get ⁴**much** pollution.

There are, however, ⁵**a little** bad things. ⁶**There aren't** much to do in the evening. There isn't a cinema; there are only ⁷**a few** cafés; and ⁸**there are many** clothes shops, so we have to go to the next town to buy clothes. Fortunately, there are ⁹**many** supermarkets, so we always have ¹⁰**enough** food!

In winter, there's ¹¹**much** snow and that's great for skiing. But in the summer there's ¹²**not enough** rain, so you can't do outdoor activities very often.

- ▶ There are _____ 6 _____
- ▶ ✓ _____ 7 _____
- 1 _____ 8 _____
- 2 _____ 9 _____
- 3 _____ 10 _____
- 4 _____ 11 _____
- 5 _____ 12 _____

***16**



Read the text in exercise 15 again. Then write about your town.

cafés cinemas houses noise people
 pollution rain shops snow supermarkets
 traffic trees parks roads

There are a lot of good things about my town.
 There are ...

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			

4 Personal pronouns; impersonal *there* and *it/they*

I can use personal and impersonal pronouns.

Personal pronouns

I'm older than *him* but he's taller than *me*.



Pronouns refer to nouns. We often use them to avoid repeating a noun.

Subject	Verb	Object
Helen	knows	Lucy and Ben.
She	likes	them.

	Subject	Object
Singular	I	me
	you	you
	he	him
	she	her
	it	it
Plural	we	us
	you	you
	they	them

We always use a subject with a verb.
*Helen knows Lucy and Ben. **She** likes them. Likes them.*

We use **it** for things and animals.
*I've got a new **phone**. **It's** really nice.
This is my **horse**. Would you like to ride it?*

* 1 Choose the correct pronoun.

- ▶ **She** / Her is a teacher.
- 1 Our grandmother lives with **we** / us.
- 2 **They** / **Them** weren't at school today.
- 3 **I** / **me** am reading an interesting book.
- 4 I'd like to meet **he** / **him**.
- 5 This pen belongs to **she** / **her**.
- 6 Can **we** / **us** go to the park?
- 7 Jane and Sarah didn't wait for **they** / **them**.
- 8 Where does **he** / **him** live?
- 9 Harry sat down next to **I** / **me**.
- 10 I think **she** / **her** is funny.

* 2 Read Lucy's sentences about her friends, Anna and Tom. Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns.

- ▶ Mrs Fox has two children: Anna and Tom. They are in my class.
- 1 Anna is very nice. I like _____ a lot.
- 2 Tom bought a new pen, but he lost _____ yesterday.
- 3 Anna and I are friends. _____ often do our homework together.
- 4 Anna and Tom were at the shopping centre on Saturday. I saw _____ at the bookshop.
- 5 Tom likes computer games. _____ plays them every day.
- 6 Anna and Tom visited the Khalifa Tower last year. _____'s incredibly tall!
- 7 I was late yesterday, but Anna waited for _____.
- 8 Tom has two good friends, Robert and Fred. They go to school with _____.
- 9 Anna's got dark hair but _____'s got blue eyes.
- 10 Mrs Brown is one of our teachers. She teaches _____ history.

3 4.1 Listen and choose the correct picture.



a _____



d 1



b _____



e _____



c _____



f _____

4 Work in pairs. Student A says the name of a famous person or people. Student B says a sentence using a pronoun.

She's from America.

I saw him on TV yesterday.

They're footballers.

5 Read the text and look at the pronouns in bold. Write the noun for each pronoun.

My name's Jack. I am 15 years old and I live in Manchester. ¹**It** is a big city in England and I love ²**it**.
I've got a brother called Bill. ³**He** is also 15 years old. That's because ⁴**we** are twins. Actually, ⁵**he** is ten minutes older than ⁶**me**!
Bill and I go to the same school, but I don't see ⁷**him** in lessons because the teachers put ⁸**us** in different classes.
My best friends are Ben and Richard. I see ⁹**them** every weekend, because ¹⁰**they** play basketball in the same team as me.

- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| ▶ <u>Jack</u> | 6 _____ |
| 1 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 8 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 9 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 10 _____ |
| 5 _____ | |

6 4.2 Complete the dialogue with subject and object pronouns. Then listen and check.



Kim Hi, Jane. How are you ?
Jane ¹_____ 'm fine. What are you doing?
Kim I'm going to Emily's house.
Jane Emily? But ²_____ 's still at school.
Kim Are you sure? I spoke to her this morning and she agreed to meet ³_____ at four o'clock at her house.
Jane Well, I saw ⁴_____ at school. She was with Beth. ⁵_____ were talking to Mr Salmon.
Kim Who's he? I don't know ⁶_____.
Jane ⁷_____ 's the music teacher. Beth and Emily play in the orchestra. I think he was talking to ⁸_____ about the music concert.
Kim OK. So, Emily isn't at her house now. What should I do?
Jane Come to my house. ⁹_____ can do our homework together.
Kim Do you understand ¹⁰_____
Jane Yes.
Kim I don't. Maybe you can help ¹¹_____!

Impersonal *it/they* and *there*

We sometimes use **it** as an impersonal subject. In these cases, **it** doesn't mean a person or a thing. We use **it** to talk about:

the weather	dates
<i>It's sunny.</i>	<i>It's Thursday.</i>
the time	<i>It's the tenth of February.</i>
<i>It's half past three.</i>	distance
	<i>It's 120 kilometres to London.</i>

We use impersonal **there + be** to say that something exists. The real subject comes after the verb.

There's a book under your chair.
There are some new computers in our classroom.

We often use impersonal **there + be** with **some** or with numbers.

There are 30 people in my class.
There was some cheese in the fridge.

There or it/they?

We use impersonal **there + be** when we talk about something for the first time. When we talk about it a second time, we use **it** or **they**.

There's a spider in the bathroom. (= new information)
It's very big! (We know you're talking about the spider now)

There are a lot of advertisements on TV. (= new information)
I think they're boring. (We know 'they' means the advertisements)

*7 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ **There's / It's** the fourteenth of July.
- There's / It's** quarter past six.
 - There's / It's** hot and sunny today.
 - There's / It's** a good film on at the cinema.
 - There's / It's** Friday today.
 - There's / It's** someone at the door.
 - There are / It's** four kilometres to my school.
 - There was / It was** windy yesterday.
 - There's / It's** some oil on your trousers!
 - There was / It was** a pencil on the desk.
 - There was / It was** the seventeenth on Sunday.

*8 4.3 Listen to two students playing the guessing game 'Where in the world am I?' Complete the chart using full sentences.



Local time	It's 2 p.m.
Weather	
Distance from London	
Population	
Interesting sights	
City	

*9

GAME

Now play the game with your partner. Student A looks at page 168 for information. Student B looks at page 170. Ask and answer questions and complete the chart. Can you guess the place?

Beijing (China) Dubai (UAE)
 New Delhi (India) New York (USA)

London time	12 p.m.	
	Student A	Student B
Local time		
Weather		
Distance from London		
Population		
Interesting sights		
City		

What time is it in your town?

It's seven o'clock in the morning.

10 Complete the sentences with *there, it, they* and *is, are, was* or *were*.

- ▶ *There are* _____ a lot of mountains in Nepal. *They are* _____ the highest in the world.
- 1 _____ a football match on TV yesterday. _____ very exciting.
- 2 I go to a small school. _____ eight teachers. _____ all very good.
- 3 _____ a festival in my town today. _____ the biggest in my country.
- 4 _____ some milk in the fridge, but _____ old, so I didn't drink it.
- 5 _____ three books on the desk yesterday, but _____ there now!

12 Read Katy's email to her new pen friend. Complete the text. Write one word in each gap.

Dear Jill

I'd like to be your pen friend. Let me tell you about myself.

¹ _____ live in Inverness. ² _____ is a small city in Scotland. ³ _____ are 60,000 people in the city. I like ⁴ _____ here.

Today, ⁵ _____ is sunny. But in the winter ⁶ _____ rains a lot and sometimes snows.

⁷ _____ are some interesting places near Inverness.

⁸ _____ is about 250 km to Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland, and ⁹ _____ only 25 km to Loch Ness, with its famous monster.

¹⁰ _____ are five people in my family. My dad is called Peter and ¹¹ _____ is a teacher. My mum is called Linda and ¹² _____ is a hairdresser. I've got a sister called Sally; she is two years older than ¹³ _____. I've got a brother called John; I'm three years older than ¹⁴ _____. They are annoying sometimes but I like ¹⁵ _____.

Please write to ¹⁶ _____ about your life in Australia. Are ¹⁷ _____ kangaroos near your town?

Best wishes

Katy



11 Correct the words in bold.

- ▶ We were late. My dad drove **we** to the station. us
- 1 Sally's mum is a doctor. **He** works at the hospital. _____
- 2 What's the time? – **Is** three o'clock. _____
- 3 Your brother is funny. I like **her**. _____
- 4 There are some shoes under the sofa. I think **there** are yours. _____
- 5 I like films. But **my parents they** never go to the cinema. _____
- 6 My grandmother lives in Italy. **She's** a beautiful country. _____
- 7 Sam and I are going to the beach. Would you like to come with **them**? _____
- 8 **There are** five kilometres to the city centre. _____
- 9 **It's** a new boy in my class. He's quite shy. _____
- 10 Who's that girl? – I don't know **him**. _____

13 Write an email to a pen friend. Describe your town and your family.



Dear ...
 I'd like to be your pen friend. Let me tell you about myself.
 I live in ...

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			

5 Demonstratives and possessives

I can use demonstratives and possessives to describe and identify nouns.

Demonstrative Pronouns; *one* and *ones*



We use **this** and **these** for things that are near us.
This jacket isn't the right size.

We use **that** and **those** for things that are not near us.
That jacket over there is a nice colour!

We can also use **this** and **these** for things that are happening now.
*I'm enjoying **this** film.*

We can also use **that** and **those** for things that aren't near in time.
*I didn't understand **those** questions in maths yesterday.*

We can use demonstrative pronouns without nouns.
*'I'm looking for some new shoes.' 'Try **these**.'*
'There's a yellow sports car outside your house.'
*'**That** belongs to my uncle.'*

We can use **one** or **ones** so that we don't repeat a noun. We often use it with a demonstrative pronoun or an adjective.
*'Would you like a **sandwich**?' 'Yes, I'd like **that one**.'*
*'How much are the **jeans**?' 'The **black ones** or the **blue ones**.'*

We can ask the question *Which one(s)...?*
*'Can I try the T-shirt?' 'Which **one**?' 'The **red one**.'*

*1 Complete the sentences with *this, that, these* or *those*.

- ▶ That film was great. I really enjoyed it.
- _____ is my bike over there.
 - 'Are you enjoying your dinner?' 'Yes. _____ food is delicious.'
 - 'Where are _____ boys?' 'I can't see them now.'
 - _____ chips here are for you.
 - Do you remember _____ day at the beach last year?
 - 'Why are you wearing _____ gloves?' 'My hands are cold.'
 - I'm trying to do my homework, but I don't understand _____ question.
 - '_____ are my grandparents.' 'Hello. Nice to meet you.'

*2 5.1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box and *one* or *ones*. Then listen and check.

big black old red that this those

- ▶ This book is interesting but that one over there is cheaper.
- The blue shirt is OK but I prefer the _____.
 - 'Do you want these sweets?' 'No. I want _____.'
 - I don't want a small cup. I'd like a _____.
 - Which horse is faster? The white one or the _____?
 - The new chairs at school are really uncomfortable. I prefer the _____.
 - 'Which is your bike?' '_____ here.'

Possessives

We use possessive adjectives with nouns, and possessive pronouns without nouns.

*That book belongs to me. It is **my** book. It is **mine**.*

Subject pronoun	Possessive adjective	Possessive pronoun
I	my	mine
you	your	yours
he	his	his
she	her	hers
it	its	–
we	our	ours
you	your	yours
they	their	theirs

We use **his** when a boy or man has got something; we use **her** and **hers** when a girl or woman has got something.

*Sally and Michael have got new bicycles. **His** is red. **Hers** is blue.*

We don't use **the** with possessives.

This is ~~the~~ her car. That is ~~the~~ mine.

Possessive 's

We use an apostrophe (') with nouns and names to show possession.

We add 's to a singular noun or name.

Our teacher's name is Mrs Benson.

I like Sue's shoes.

We add ' to a regular plural.

My sisters' bedroom has got three beds.

He uses his parents' computer.

We add 's to an irregular plural.

The children's toys are in their bedroom.

* 3 Choose the correct option.

▶ My brother has got a guitar. It's very old.
My **brother's** / **brothers'** guitar is very old.

- Helen has got red hair. It's very long.
Helen's / **Helens'** hair is very long.
- Your sisters share a bedroom. It's quite big.
Your **sister's** / **sisters'** bedroom is quite big.
- Her children go to school. It's a small school.
Her **children's** / **childrens'** school is small.
- Paul has got a new phone. It is very cheap.
Pauls' / **Paul's** new phone is very cheap.
- Kim took some photos. They are excellent.
Kim's / **Kims'** photos are excellent.
- Elephants have got trunks. They are very long.
Elephant's / **Elephants'** trunks are very long.

* 4 Complete the sentences with possessive adjectives.



- ▶ I do my homework every night.
▶ She visits her grandparents on Sundays.
- We really like _____ teacher. She's great.
 - Kim and Jane are sisters. _____ brother is called Robert.
 - Did you make _____ bed this morning?
 - My mum has got dark hair but _____ eyes are blue.
 - They always clean _____ teeth after breakfast.
 - I like her but I don't like _____ friends.
 - That computer has got a problem with _____ mouse.
 - He played football yesterday. _____ trainers are very dirty.
 - Do you take _____ phone to school?
 - Richard and _____ sister play in the same orchestra.

* 5 Complete the sentences with possessive pronouns.

- ▶ That phone belongs to me. It's mine.
- Those are her socks. They're _____.
 - Sam and I live in that house. It's _____.
 - This tennis racket belongs to him. It's _____.
 - Harry and Jim share that room. It's _____.
 - Do those shoes belong to your brother? Are they _____?
 - This is our computer. It's _____.
 - You didn't buy these pens. They aren't _____.
 - This watch belongs to my sister. It's _____.

6 **5.2** What do they want to eat and drink? Listen and write. Use the words in the box.

burger chips pasta salad sandwich
soup coffee cola orange juice water

Mr Finch: _____
Mrs Finch: sandwich, _____
their daughter: _____
their son: _____

7 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Is this coat your / yours?
- Do you know **her** / hers grandparents?
 - Their town is cool. **Our** / Ours is boring.
 - I can't remember **their** / theirs names.
 - Please come to **my** / mine house tomorrow.
 - I've got my bag. Where's **your** / yours?
 - Look at that dog. **Its** / His ears are huge!
 - 'Is this for Milly?' 'Yes. It's **her** / hers.'
 - Our** / Ours teachers are good. What about yours?

8 Compare yourself with your partner. Use the words in the box.

bag pen socks shoes hair

My bag is brown. Yours is blue.

My hair is brown. Yours is brown too.

9 Write sentences about you and your partner.

My bag is brown. Max's bag is blue.
My hair is brown. Vicky's hair is brown too.

10 **GAME** Imagine you are Mandy. Look at the picture on the right and say a false sentence using a word from the box. Your partner says the correct sentence.

bag hair jacket shoes trousers T-shirt

His jacket is white. Hers is brown.

No. His jacket is black. Hers is white.

Their shoes are black. Mine are white.

No. Their shoes are white. Yours are brown.



Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊 😊😊 😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

Reading and writing

1 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ I'd like ___ cheese, please.
A much **B** some C a
- 1 I can't find ___ coat.
A me B my C mine
- 2 ___ some beautiful flowers in the park.
A There's B They are C There are
- 3 We need a few _____.
A strawberries B bread C information
- 4 Ronny wants to become _____.
A footballer B a footballer C the footballer
- 5 Did you enjoy ___ film yesterday?
A this B that C these

2 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to answer each question.

- ▶ Do you eat fish? B
- A Yes. I eat everyone.
B Yes. I eat everything.
C Yes. I eat everywhere.
- 1 Do you know Fred's sister? ____
A Yes. She's very nice.
B No. What's his name?
C No. I don't know him.
- 2 Have you got any milk? ____
A No. I haven't got some.
B Yes. I've got a lot of.
C Yes. I've got a little.
- 3 Is that your mum's car? ____
A No. It's my dad's car.
B No. It isn't hers.
C Yes. It's his.
- 4 Can I have a sandwich? ____
A No. I'm sorry. There's too much bread.
B No. I'm sorry. There's enough bread.
C No. I'm sorry. There isn't enough bread.
- 5 Did you see anyone at the park? ____
A No. I didn't see no one.
B Yes. I saw one people.
C Yes. I saw a few children.

- 6 She's very shy. She doesn't talk to ____.
A anyone B no one C everyone
- 7 We can't play football. There ___ people.
A are enough B aren't enough C is too much
- 8 Your T-shirt is nice, but ___ looks horrible.
A her B my C his
- 9 There's lots of ___ in the kitchen.
A people B fruit C cupboards
- 10 Wool comes from _____.
A sheep B sheeps C the sheep

3 What does Ed say to Theo? Match a letter (A–H) to 1–5. You don't need to use all the letters.

- Theo Are you OK?
Ed ▶ C
- Theo What is it?
Ed 1 _____
- Theo Would you like to borrow mine?
Ed 2 _____
- Theo I don't think he's got his boots at school.
Ed 3 _____
- Theo You could ask Peter or Ben.
Ed 4 _____
- Theo OK. When do you need them?
Ed 5 _____
- Theo There isn't enough time!
- A Your feet are too big. But I think your brother's boots are the right size.
B I don't know them very well. Can you ask them?
C No. I've got a problem.
D Tomorrow morning.
E I can't find my football boots.
F The lesson starts in ten minutes!
G I haven't got your boots.
H Oh. Has anyone else got football boots?

- 4 Read the text below and choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.



▶ A people worry that the Earth may not survive forever and humans will have to go ¹ _____ else.

But is life possible anywhere else? People sometimes talk about Mars, one of the nearest planets to Earth. There are, however, ² _____ problems with Mars. First of all, ³ _____ at least 34 million miles from Earth to Mars and it takes eight months to get there. Secondly, there is ⁴ _____ oxygen and there's too much carbon dioxide. ⁵ _____ can survive on Mars without special equipment.

The biggest problem, however, is water. There isn't ⁶ _____ water on Mars. Without ⁷ _____, life isn't possible.

People ⁸ _____ about life on Mars but it probably won't happen.

- | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ A Some | B Someone | C Any |
| 1 A anywhere | B nowhere | C somewhere |
| 2 A lot of | B much | C too many |
| 3 A it is | B they are | C there are |
| 4 A a few | B not enough | C enough |
| 5 A Anyone | B No one | C Someone |
| 6 A any | B no | C some |
| 7 A the water | B water | C waters |
| 8 A dream | B dreams | C is dreaming |

- 5 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use one word.

- ▶ This is my pen and that is her pen.
This is my pen and that is hers.
- There isn't anything on the table.
There's _____ on the table.
 - My brother is annoying but yours is nice.
My brother is annoying, but _____ brother is nice.
 - There aren't many clouds in the sky.
There are a _____ clouds in the sky.
 - I haven't got many eggs, so I can't make a cake.
I haven't got _____ eggs for a cake.
 - Do you want the red dress or the blue dress?
Do you want the red dress or the blue _____?
 - Kim doesn't like the shoes over there.
Kim doesn't like _____ shoes.
 - Henry has got a new teacher. He's very young.
_____ new teacher is very young.
 - These books belong to us.
These are _____.


- 6 Complete the text. Write one word in each space.

Alice is fifteen years old. She shares a bedroom with ▶ her sister, Isabel. She is thirteen.

'It's difficult to share a room. There ¹ _____ enough space for everything. We've got a lot ² _____ clothes, but ³ _____ is only one wardrobe. My mum says we've got too ⁴ _____ clothes but girls need clothes!

⁵ _____ sister loves reading, so there are ⁶ _____ of books in the room. She keeps ⁷ _____ on a big shelf on the wall. I prefer listening to music, so I've only got a ⁸ _____ books.

We both play ⁹ _____ clarinet, so there are two clarinets in the room. ¹⁰ _____ one over there is Isabel's; and this ¹¹ _____ is mine.'

- 7  Write a short description of your room. Answer the questions.

- What have you got in your room?
- Is your room big enough?
- Do you share your room?

Listening



8 **R1.1** Listen. Choose the correct picture A, B or C.



A

B

C



1 A

B

C



2 A

B

C



3 A

B

C



4 A

B

C



5 A

B

C

9 **R1.2** You will hear Toby and his mum preparing a picnic. Choose the correct answer A, B or C.



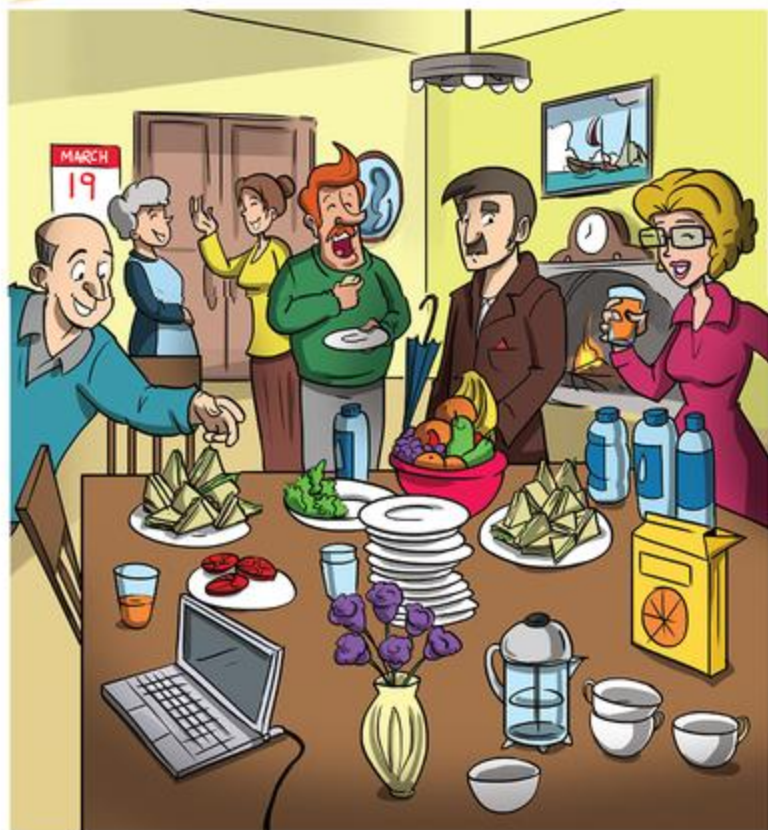
- ▶ Toby has a cheese and mayonnaise sandwich.
 - A True B False C We don't know
- 1 Someone has a chicken and tomato sandwich.
 - A True B False C We don't know
- 2 They've got a lot of tomatoes.
 - A True B False C We don't know
- 3 There isn't much chicken.
 - A True B False C We don't know
- 4 Everyone has mayonnaise.
 - A True B False C We don't know
- 5 There isn't enough mayonnaise for Toby's sister.
 - A True B False C We don't know

Speaking

10 Look at the picture. Describe everything in it. Use the words in the box.

a/an enough a few a little a lot of
many much some someone too it

There are a lot of sandwiches.



6 Present simple and continuous

I can use the present simple and the present continuous tenses.



Present simple

We use the present simple to talk about things that are always true.

*Water **boils** at 100 degrees.*

*Nurses **help** sick people in hospital.*

We use the present simple to talk about things that are permanent or regular.

*Robert **lives** in France.*

*I **normally go** to classes at the university.*

We use words and phrases like *often, normally, sometimes, every day* with the present simple.

*Mary **normally has** breakfast at seven.*

*I **always drive** to work.*

We use the present simple when we talk about opinions and thoughts, using verbs like **hate, know, like, love, need, prefer, remember, think, understand, want**.

*I **like** this song.*

*We **don't know** the answer.*

We use the present simple of **think** when we talk about opinions.

*He **thinks** the film was boring.*

Present continuous

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are in progress now.

*The water **is boiling**. ~ I'll make some tea.*

*I'm sorry. I can't talk at the moment. I'm **helping** my mum in the kitchen.*

We use the present continuous to talk about temporary things that are in progress around now.

*Sarah **is working** in Scotland this week, but she will be here again next week.*

*This week, I'm **revising** for an exam.*

We use time expressions like *now, at the moment, this week, today* with the present continuous.

*We're **having dinner at the moment**.*

*Why **are you walking** to school **today**?*

We don't normally use the present continuous with verbs of opinion or thought.

*I'm **liking** this song.*

*We **aren't knowing** the answer.*

We use the present continuous of **think** when we describe an action.

*Please be quiet. I'm **thinking**.*

We can also use the present continuous to talk about the future. See Unit 12.

*** 1** Write the present simple *he/she/it* form of these verbs.



- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| ▶ carry <u>carries</u> | 8 like _____ |
| 1 cost _____ | 9 pass _____ |
| 2 clean _____ | 10 play _____ |
| 3 dance _____ | 11 talk _____ |
| 4 eat _____ | 12 teach _____ |
| 5 fry _____ | 13 try _____ |
| 6 go _____ | 14 use _____ |
| 7 have _____ | 15 wash _____ |
| | 16 worry _____ |

**** 2** **6.1** Listen to the final sounds in the present simple verbs from exercise 1. What do you hear? Write the verb form in the correct column.



+ /z/	+ /s/	+ /ɪz/
carries	costs	dances

**** 3** **6.2** Complete the text with the present simple form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check your answers.



Daisy Do _____ you share a bedroom?

Anna Yes, ¹ _____ (I/do). I share with my sister.

Daisy ² _____ (you/mind) sharing?

Anna There's one big problem. We ³ _____ (not/go) to the same school. So my sister ⁴ _____ (get) up at half past six and ⁵ _____ (catch) a bus at quarter past seven. That ⁶ _____ (wake) me up, but I ⁷ _____ (not/get) up until half past seven. I ⁸ _____ (walk) to school and it only ⁹ _____ (take) ten minutes.

Daisy Are there any other problems?

Anna Well, my sister ¹⁰ _____ (not/tidy) the room. ¹¹ _____ (she/leave) her clothes on the floor. That ¹² _____ (make) me angry.

Daisy ¹³ _____ (she/do) anything else annoying?

Anna She sometimes ¹⁴ _____ (watch) loud music videos on her laptop. I ¹⁵ _____ (not/like) that.

Daisy ¹⁶ _____ (you/do) anything annoying?

Anna Me? No. I'm perfect.

**** 4** Rewrite each present simple sentence as affirmative (✓), negative (x) or question (?).

- ▶ My dad repairs old cars.
x My dad doesn't repair old cars.
- 1 Do your parents speak English?
✓ _____ English.
- 2 Sarah studies geography.
? _____ geography?
- 3 Does Richard live in London?
x _____ in London.
- 4 Mr Baker doesn't watch the news on TV.
✓ _____ the news on TV.
- 5 Those children don't do enough homework.
? _____ enough homework?
- 6 My brother drinks fruit juice at breakfast.
x _____ fruit juice at breakfast.

**** 5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ Do you like _____ this food?
(you/like)
- 1 _____ that person's name.
(I/not know)
- 2 _____ tea or coffee?
(you/prefer)
- 3 _____ cold weather.
(she/hate)
- 4 _____ the question.
(he/not understand)
- 5 _____ he's funny?
(you/think)
- 6 _____ anything else.
Thank you. (we/not need)
- 7 _____ this chocolate cake.
(I/love)
- 8 _____ the address?
(you/remember)
- 9 _____ some new shoes.
(she/want)
- 10 _____ that book?
(he/like)

6 Work in groups. Read the information in the table and make sentences about the animals. Use the verbs in the box. Check your answers on page 168.

come from eat live for weigh



Place	Africa, Asia, Australia, Antarctica
Weight	35kg, 55kg, 170kg, 250kg
Food	meat, grass, plants, fish
Age	8 years, 15 years, 20 years, 40 years

Gorillas come from Asia.

No. They don't come from Asia. They come from Africa.

7 Write the *-ing* forms of the verbs below.

- ▶ wait waiting
- 1 write _____
- 2 sleep _____
- 3 try _____
- 4 close _____
- 5 die _____
- 6 do _____
- 7 study _____

8 Spell the *-ing* forms of the verbs below.

- ▶ read reading
- ▶ put putting
- 1 plan _____
- 2 stay _____
- 3 wear _____
- 4 swim _____
- 5 snow _____
- 6 get _____
- 7 look _____
- 8 open _____
- 9 relax _____
- 10 begin _____
- 11 visit _____
- 12 happen _____

9 Correct the mistakes in each sentence.

- ▶ She aren't waiting.
She isn't waiting.
- 1 Where are you go?

- 2 The bus isn't stoping!

- 3 She doesn't wearing a coat.

- 4 Sam driving to Manchester today.

- 5 What they are talking about?

- 6 Vicky is write an email.

- 7 Is it snowing outside?

- 8 Hes eating an ice cream.

10 **6.3** Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verb in brackets. Listen and check.



- Peter Hi, Jack. It's Peter.
Jack Hey. Where are you?
Peter I 'm sitting (sit) on a train with my family.
Jack Where ¹_____ (you/go)?
Peter We ²_____ (travel) to Scotland to visit my cousins.
Jack That sounds exciting.
Peter Actually, I ³_____ (not/enjoy) the journey. The air-conditioning ⁴_____ (not/work), so it's really hot in here at the moment.
Jack So what are you doing? ⁵_____ (you/play) games on your phone?
Peter No, I'm not. I ⁶_____ (revise) for the maths test.
Jack Bad luck. So what ⁷_____ (everyone else/do)?
Peter My sister ⁸_____ (listen) to music and my parents ⁹_____ (read). Actually, no, they ¹⁰_____ (not read) now; they ¹¹_____ (sleep).
Jack I've got to go now. Enjoy Scotland. I hope the sun shines.
Peter Thanks, but right now, I ¹²_____ (look) forward to some cold weather!

11 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ It's raining every day / at the moment.
- 1 I normally / Today I take the bus to school.
- 2 He eats fish every day / at the moment.
- 3 She's often / This week she's visiting friends in London.
- 4 They always / Today they do their homework together.
- 5 He's studying engineering every year / this year.
- 6 Are you having dinner on Mondays / now?
- 7 The train is never arriving / arriving right now.
- 8 I get up late at the weekend / this week.
- 9 What are you normally doing / doing at the moment?
- 10 On Saturdays / Today I work in a shop.

12 Complete the sentences with the correct verb form.

- ▶ 'What are you watching?' 'That new DVD. It's great.' (you/watch)
- 1 Mary _____ to yoga classes on Monday evenings. (go)
- 2 '_____?' 'No. Let's play tennis.' (it/rain)
- 3 Elephants _____ for 50 or 60 years. (live)
- 4 'Can I speak to Jack, please?' 'I'm sorry. _____ with his grandparents. He will be back tomorrow.' (He/stay)
- 5 'Are you OK?' 'No, I'm not. _____ a very bad day.' (I/have)
- 6 'How often _____ her room?' 'Every week.' (she/tidy)
- 7 Lucy's a vegetarian. _____ meat. (she/not eat)
- 8 'Why _____ the bus?' 'My bike's got a puncture.' (you/take)
- 9 This is very funny but nobody _____ . (laugh)
- 10 '_____ glasses?' 'Yes. When I watch TV.' (you/wear)

13 **6.4** Listen to the dialogue and look at the picture. Complete the table with a number and the words in the box.



footballer chef mechanic photographer
 Beijing London Los Angeles Manchester
 New York Oxford Paris Sydney

	Bill	Tony	Harry	Peter
Number	3			
Job	chef			
Usual city				
Current city				



***14** Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs. Use the present simple or present continuous.

Kate Do you remember (remember) my friend, Maria?

Polly Yes. She ¹ _____ (live) in Spain, doesn't she?

Kate Normally, but at the moment she ² _____ (live) in China.

Polly Why is she in China?

Kate Her parents ³ _____ (spend) a year there. They ⁴ _____ (teach) at a university.

Polly ⁵ _____ she _____ (like) it?

Kate At first it was difficult but now she ⁶ _____ (enjoy) it. She ⁷ _____ (say) it's very different from Europe.

Polly ⁸ _____ she _____ (learn) Chinese?

Kate Yes. She ⁹ _____ (go) to Chinese classes every day after school. She ¹⁰ _____ (understand) a lot, but speaking is more difficult. In fact, she ¹¹ _____ (think) about studying Chinese at university, when she goes back to Spain.

Polly What about the food? ¹² _____ she _____ (like) it?

Kate Yes, she ¹³ _____ (love) it. Spanish people like seafood and I ¹⁴ _____ (think) Chinese people eat a lot of seafood too.

***15** Complete the text using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.



Katy Dixon is a famous scientist. She works at a university in London. She is a volcanologist. That means that she ¹ _____ (study) the science of volcanoes. She ² _____ (spend) most of the time at the university. She ³ _____ (do) experiments in a laboratory, and she also ⁴ _____ (teach) students. But sometimes she ⁵ _____ (travel) to interesting places in the world and ⁶ _____ (explore) real volcanoes.

This week, Katy ⁷ _____ (visit) South America. She ⁸ _____ (make) a programme for television. Today they ⁹ _____ (film) an 'active' volcano. Active volcanoes sometimes ¹⁰ _____ (erupt), so she has to be careful. At the moment, Katy ¹¹ _____ (sit) at the top of the volcano and ¹² _____ (talk) about lava. She ¹³ _____ (have) a fantastic time. She ¹⁴ _____ (think) it is the best job in the world!

***16**



Write a short personal profile. Describe your routine. Then imagine you are on holiday this week. Write about your activities.

I normally get up at seven o'clock. I have ...

This week, I'm visiting ...

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			

7 Past simple

I can use the past simple tense with appropriate time expressions.

Past simple: regular verbs



We use the past simple to talk about actions that finished in the past.

*I **started** school in 2010.*

*We **didn't play** football on Sunday.*

*'Did Molly **phone** yesterday?' 'Yes, she **did**.'*

*What **did** you **watch** on TV?*

Spelling rules: regular verbs

Most verbs: + **-ed**

ask → asked start → started

Verbs ending in -e: + **-d**

live → lived hate → hated

Verbs ending in vowel + -y: + **-ed**

stay → stayed enjoy → enjoyed

Verbs ending in consonant + -y: → **-ied**

carry → carried study → studied

Verbs ending in one vowel + one consonant:

double the consonant

plan → planned prefer → preferred

We don't double the consonant when stress is not on the last syllable.

listen → listened

We don't double the consonant when it is -w, -x or -y.

relax → relaxed snow → snowed

Pronunciation: -ed

The -ed ending has three different pronunciations.

/ɪd/ after /d/, /t/: *started, ended, invited*

/t/ after /f/, /k/, /p/, /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/: *laughed, asked, watched*

/d/ after other sounds: *played, called, used*

* 1 Write the past simple form of the verbs.


- ▶ agree agreed
- 1 ask _____
- 2 close _____
- 3 cry _____
- 4 dance _____
- 5 discover _____
- 6 enjoy _____
- 7 hate _____
- 8 miss _____
- 9 need _____
- 10 plan _____
- 11 rain _____
- 12 stop _____
- 13 study _____
- 14 try _____

** 2 7.1 Listen to the final sound in the past simple verbs from exercise 1. What do you hear? Write the words in the correct place.

/ɪd/	/t/
	asked
/d/	
agreed	

****3** Complete the sentences with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets.


- ▶ It *didn't rain* on Sunday. (not rain)
- 1 Cathy _____ after the exam. (cry)
- 2 _____ you _____ Tim to the concert? (invite)
- 3 My parents _____ English at school. (not study)
- 4 The train _____ suddenly. (stop)
- 5 _____ your grandparents _____ you at the weekend? (visit)
- 6 I _____ Tom's phone to call my mum. (use)
- 7 Katie _____ the door for her teacher. (open)
- 8 What _____ your mum _____ last night? (cook)
- 9 Harry _____ for me at the bus stop. (wait)
- 10 I really _____ that meal. (enjoy)

****4**  **Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions about yesterday and complete the table. Write a tick ✓ or a cross ✗.**

play sport	
tidy your room	
use a computer	✓
walk to school	
get maths homework	
eat chocolate	

Did you use a computer yesterday?

Yes, I did.

****5**  **GAME** Write two true sentences and two false sentences about your partner in exercise 4. Work with a new partner. Ask them to guess the false sentences.

Jane didn't use a computer yesterday.

That's false. I think Jane used a computer yesterday.

Past simple: be

We use the past simple of **be** to talk about situations that finished in the past.

*He **was** a footballer.*

*His parents **were** very angry.*

*The exam **wasn't** difficult.*

*'**Were** you at school yesterday?' 'No, I **wasn't**.'*

*Where **was** James last week?*

*There **was** a lot of traffic in the street.*

****6**  **Circle the correct option.**

- ▶ The weather is good today, but yesterday it was / wasn't / were terrible.
- 1 I **was** / wasn't / weren't at school on Monday because I was ill.
- 2 William Shakespeare **was** / were / weren't a famous writer.
- 3 They **was** / wasn't / weren't on the bus; they were on the train.
- 4 We enjoyed the meal. We **was** / were / weren't very hungry!
- 5 There **was** / wasn't / weren't any milk in the fridge. It was empty.
- 6 You **was** / were / wasn't tired yesterday. Are you OK today?
- 7 I didn't have an omelette. There **was** / wasn't / weren't any eggs in the cupboard.
- 8 Mike was happy because the exam **was** / wasn't / weren't very difficult.
- 9 Those people **were** / wasn't / weren't students; they were teachers!
- 10 The school **was** / wasn't / were very noisy at two o'clock but now it's very quiet.

7.2 Write the words in the correct order to make questions. Then listen and check.



- ▶ your parents / were / angry
Were your parents angry?
- ▶ yesterday / Jo / where / was
Where was Jo yesterday?
- 1 good / the film / was _____?
- 2 was / his name / what _____?
- 3 late / the bus / was _____?
- 4 clean / were / their shoes _____?
- 5 the exam / was / when _____?
- 6 grandfather / an engineer / your / was _____?
- 7 your / were / where / trainers _____?
- 8 any tourists / there / in the museum / were _____?
- 9 you / were / why / tired _____?
- 10 snow / any / there / was / in the mountains _____?

8 Work in pairs. Student B: turn to page 170. Student A: ask Student B questions and complete text A. Then look at text B and answer Student B's questions.

A Sam and Jack weren't at school yesterday. They _____ at home. They _____ ill. Sam _____ tired and he _____ in bed. Jack _____ in bed. He _____ on the sofa. They _____ bored. There _____ a lot to do.

Were Sam and Jack at school yesterday?

No, they weren't.

B Saturday was a nice day. It was very hot. Lucy and Sara weren't at the beach. They were at the shops. Lucy was happy, because the shops weren't busy. Sara wasn't happy. She was bored and hungry but there wasn't a good café.

Was Saturday a nice day?

Yes, it was.

Past simple: irregular verbs

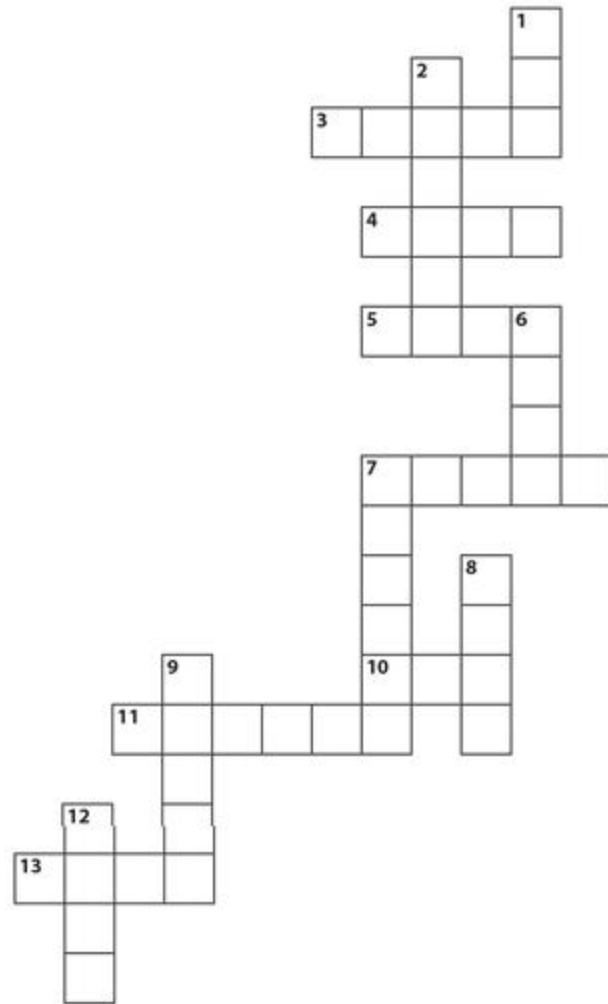
There are no rules for the affirmative past simple form of irregular verbs. You must learn each form individually. See the list on page 176.

go → **went** *buy* → **bought** *take* → **took** *have* → **had**
 We **went** on holiday to Luxor in 2011.
 My dad **took** a lot of photos there.

We make the past simple negative and question forms of irregular verbs like regular verbs. We use **didn't** and **did** + the infinitive.

*I was late, so I **didn't have** breakfast.*
***Did** you **buy** a T-shirt?*

9 Complete the crossword with the irregular past simple forms.



- Down**
- 1 get
 - 2 become
 - 6 take
 - 7 buy
 - 8 make
 - 9 find
 - 12 leave

- Across**
- 3 spend
 - 4 come
 - 5 go
 - 7 break
 - 10 have
 - 11 forget
 - 13 read

***10 Circle the correct option.**

- ▶ Richard didn't play / don't played football yesterday.
- 1 Emma went / goed to Australia.
- 2 Did you broke / break my computer?
- 3 Sarah didn't send / didn't sent me a postcard.
- 4 My team won / win the competition last year.
- 5 When did Libby's grandfather die / died?
- 6 Suzy not see / didn't see the cyclist.
- 7 Leo drunk / drank a litre of water after the match.
- 8 What time did you wake / do you woke up?
- 9 We hadn't / didn't have a good day at school.
- 10 Did you / Did you do the maths homework yesterday?

***11 Complete the first part of Harry's story with the past simple forms of the verb in brackets.**

Everything went (go) wrong yesterday. I ¹ _____ (get) up late, because my brother ² _____ (not set) the alarm clock. I ³ _____ (have) a shower but the water ⁴ _____ (be) cold. I ⁵ _____ (leave) the house at 8.30, so of course I ⁶ _____ (miss) the bus. I ⁷ _____ (walk) to school. It ⁸ _____ (take) me 30 minutes, and I ⁹ _____ (not arrive) on time. My teacher was angry and ¹⁰ _____ (give) me a detention.

In the morning, we ¹¹ _____ (have) a listening test in French. I ¹² _____ (not understand) anything and I ¹³ _____ (get) all the answers wrong!

***12 7.3 Complete the end of Harry's story with the past simple forms of the verbs in the box. Listen and check.**

be not come feel get have not enjoy
make rain stay wait walk

In the afternoon, we had a PE lesson, but it ¹ _____ and I ² _____ very wet. Normally I love PE but I ³ _____ it yesterday.

I ⁴ _____ at school for an extra hour because of my detention. Then I ⁵ _____ at the bus stop for the bus but it ⁶ _____. I ⁷ _____ home.

My parents ⁸ _____ worried because I was late. But my mum ⁹ _____ a nice dinner. I ¹⁰ _____ much better after that!

***13**

Work in pairs. Look at the pictures of Katy's day. Ask and answer questions about Katy.



▶



3



1



4



2



5

- ▶ what time / wake up
- 1 how / travel to the shops
- 2 what / buy
- 3 who / meet
- 4 what / eat at the café
- 5 when / get home

What time did Katy wake up?

She woke up at 9 o'clock.

***14 7.4 Now listen to Katy's description of her day and look again at the pictures in exercise 13. Are the pictures true or false? Write sentences.**

- ▶ The picture is false.
She didn't wake up at eight o'clock.
- 1 The picture is _____.
- 2 The picture is _____.
- 3 The picture is _____.
- 4 The picture is _____.
- 5 The picture is _____.

Time expressions

We often use time expressions to say when something happened. We use them with the past simple when we talk about an action or situation which is finished.

in: *I started school in 2010.*

last: *They moved house last year.*

yesterday: *I finished the book yesterday.*

on: *They arrived in Mumbai on 24 January.*

ago: *She broke her arm three weeks ago.*

We put the time before **ago**, not after it.

I went to China two years ago.

I went to China ago two years.

15 Tick (✓) the correct word to complete the expressions.



▶ _____ week

ago in last on

1 _____ 18 July.

ago in last on

2 two years _____

ago in last on

3 _____ year

ago in last on

4 six weeks _____

ago in last on

5 _____ 11 November

ago in last on

6 _____ 2010

ago in last on

7 four days _____

ago in last on

16 **7.5** Listen to Fred talking about important events in his life. Match the events 1–7 to the time expressions a–h.



▶ was born a

1 started primary school _____

2 learnt to read _____

3 first went to the cinema _____

4 started language lessons _____

5 started secondary school _____

6 meet his best friend _____

7 got a mobile phone _____

a five years ago

b in 2006

c three years ago

d in 2007

e last year

f in 2005

g on 7 May, 2000

h in 2012

17



Write about yourself and the events in exercise 16. Use time expressions.

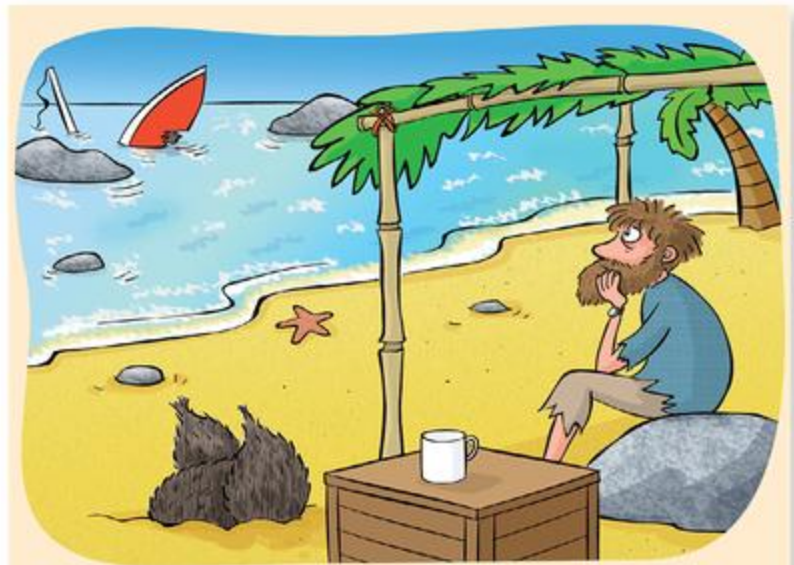
I was born on ...

I started primary school in ...

18

Read the text. Rewrite the phrases in bold in a different way. Use the words in the box and **last** or **ago**.

month one hour six months three years
two days week year



It is 2 o'clock on 13 July 2005. I arrived home in London **at one o'clock**, after my rescue from a desert island.

¹**In 2002** I left home in a boat, to sail around the world. But bad weather destroyed my boat and I had to swim to an empty island.

I didn't see anyone for two years. Then ²**in 2004**, I saw a boat. I waved but the people didn't see me.

³**In January 2005**, I became very ill and nearly died. But then ⁴**on 18 June 2005**, I saw a plane. It was flying very low. I waved and the pilot saw me!

⁵**On 7 July**, a boat arrived at the island and we sailed to a big island with an airport. ⁶**On 11 July**, I took a plane back to London.

▶ one hour ago

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

19 **7.6** Complete with the past simple forms of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.



Ben Did you have (you/have) a good weekend?

Jack No. Not really.

Ben Why not?

Jack Well, ¹_____ (Robert and I / decide) to go cycling. But ²_____ (we/get) lost.

Ben How ³_____ (that/happen)?

Jack Well, ⁴_____ (we/not/have) a map. ⁵_____ (Robert/forget) to bring it. And then it started to rain.

Ben ⁶_____ (you/get) really wet?

Jack Yes, especially Robert. ⁷_____ (he/not/have) a coat. But that wasn't the worst thing. The chain on my bicycle ⁸_____ (break).

Ben Oh no.

Jack ⁹_____ (we/not/know) what to do. My ¹⁰_____ (phone/not/work) because we couldn't get a signal. We looked for a car, but ¹¹_____ (there/not/be) any cars on the road.

Ben So what ¹²_____ (you/do)?

Jack ¹³_____ (we/walk) for an hour. In the end, ¹⁴_____ (we/come) to a village and phoned my dad. ¹⁵_____ (he/drive) to meet us in the car. ¹⁶_____ (he/not/be) happy!

20 Look at the questions in exercise 19. Use words from the table to write more past simple questions about a bad day.

When ...	Who ...	happen	see
What ...	Where ...	go	do
How ...	Why ...	decide	get
Were ...		afraid	nervous
Was ...		alone	late

When did it happen?

Why did you decide that?

21 Work in pairs. Think about a bad day that you had recently. Answer your partner's questions, and ask about his or her bad day.

When did it happen?

It was in May last year.

Were you alone?

No. I was with my sister, Ana.

22 Write a description of your day from exercise 21.



It was in May last year. My sister Ana and I decided to go shopping. It started OK. We ...

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊 😊😊 😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			

8 Past continuous

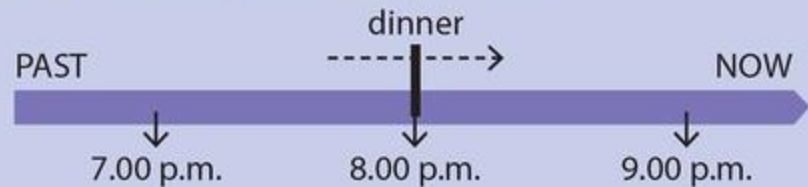
I can use the past continuous tense to describe past events and actions.

Past continuous



We use the past continuous to talk about an event that was in progress at a particular time in the past. We often use it with a time expression (e.g. *at six o'clock, yesterday morning, last night*).

We **were having** dinner at eight o'clock.



We can use the past continuous to say what different people were doing at the same time.

*In 2009 Max **was studying** in Edinburgh, his sister **was working** in Manchester and his parents **were living** in London.*

We often use the past continuous to describe the situation at the start of a story.

*It was Friday night and it **was raining** hard. Most people **were walking** fast to escape the rain, but Carla **was standing** at the bus stop. She **wasn't wearing** a coat and she **was getting** very wet. Suddenly, a car drove past very quickly and splashed her with water.*

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Was / **Were** you watching TV at seven o'clock?
- 1 They **weren't talk** / weren't talking about you.
- 2 I **was** / were listening to some great music this morning.
- 3 'I wasn't making a lot of noise.'
'Yes, you **was** / were.'
- 4 Where **was she** / she was going yesterday evening?
- 5 It was very sunny but they **didn't** / weren't wearing sunglasses.
- 6 It **was** / were snowing and children **was** / were playing in the street.
- 7 This time last year we were **siting** / sitting on the beach in Australia.
- 8 My brothers **are** / were arguing all day yesterday.
- 9 Who **was** / were your mum talking to on the phone?
- 10 John **wasn't working** / not working very hard.

** 2 8.1 Listen. What were they doing when the earthquake happened? Complete the table with the phrases below. Then complete the sentences.

do homework dream about the sea
have breakfast listen to radio play basketball
sit at desk sleep talk walk to school win

Daisy	have breakfast, _____
Fred	_____, _____
Kim and May	_____, _____
Helen	_____, _____
Ben and Alex	_____, _____

- 1 Daisy **was having breakfast** and she _____.
- 2 Fred _____ and he _____.
- 3 Kim and May _____ and they _____.
- 4 Helen _____ and she _____.
- 5 Ben and Alex _____ and they _____.

3 Look at the pictures and write questions and sentences using the past continuous.



a



c



b



d

► Jim/watch TV/six o'clock.

Jim wasn't watching TV at six o'clock.

1 Jim and Michael/have breakfast/six o'clock

2 Jim/swim/seven o'clock

3 Michael/listen to music/seven o'clock

4 Jim and Michael/have breakfast/seven o'clock

5 Michael/do homework/four o'clock

6 Jim and Michael/swim/four o'clock

7 Jim and Michael/do homework/nine o'clock?

_____, they _____.

8 Michael /play video games/nine o'clock

9 Jim/lie on the sofa/nine o'clock

10 Michael/watch TV/nine o'clock

_____, he _____.

4 GAME Work in pairs to guess your partner's actions. Student A: go to page 168. Student B: go to page 170.

I think you were cleaning your room.

I wasn't cleaning my room. I was eating an ice cream.

5 Work in pairs. Look at the example. Ask questions to complete the table.

What were you doing at 7 o'clock today?

I was cleaning my teeth.

Time	Activity
7 a.m. today	Ana was cleaning her teeth.
9 p.m. yesterday	
4 p.m. yesterday	
11 a.m. yesterday	
2 p.m. last Saturday	
11 p.m. last Saturday	

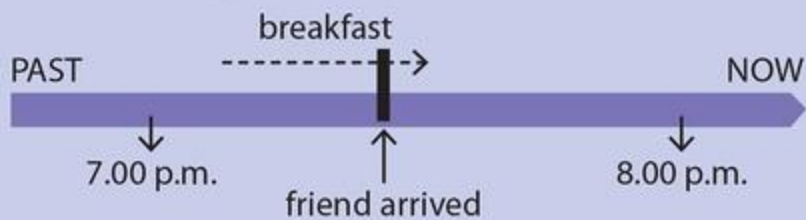
Past continuous or past simple?

We use the **past simple** to talk about an event that finished at a point in the past. We often use it to talk about a sequence of events.

*She **got up**, **had** breakfast and **went** to work.
In the morning, Robert **went** shopping in town. Then he **met** his friends at the park and they **played** football.
After that, he **went** home and **did** his homework.*

We use the **past continuous** to talk about an event that was in progress at a time in the past, or when another event happened.

*'I called you at 7 o'clock. Where were you?' 'I **was playing** basketball.'
She **was having** breakfast when her friend arrived.*



We can use the past simple and past continuous in the same sentence. We often use **when** and **while** in these sentences.

*He **was walking** to school **when** it **started** to rain.
While he **was walking** to school, it **started** to rain.*

We can use **when** or **while** with the past continuous. We cannot use **while** with the past simple.

*I saw Ben **when/while** I **was waiting** for the bus.
I **was waiting** for the bus **when** I saw Ben.*

There are some verbs that we don't normally use in the continuous form: e.g., **hear**, **know**, **like**, **love**, **understand**, **see**, **want**. See also Unit 6 page 31.

*I **wasn't understanding** the homework.
I **didn't understand** the homework.*

6 **8.2** Circle the correct option. Then listen and check your answers.

- ▶ What **did you do** / **were you doing** at half past seven?
 - 1 It **rained** / **was raining** when I left home.
 - 2 Jill got up and **had** / **was having** breakfast.
 - 3 My racket **broke** / **was breaking** when I was playing tennis.
 - 4 Where **were you going** / **did you go** when I saw your car yesterday?
 - 5 They **wanted** / **were wanting** to go out last night.
 - 6 They **did** / **were doing** their homework and then they went shopping.
 - 7 **Did she like** / **Was she liking** your new shoes?
 - 8 'Where were you yesterday afternoon?'
'I **visited** / **was visiting** my grandparents.'
 - 9 The film **finished** / **was finishing** at four o'clock.
 - 10 Mary **didn't know** / **wasn't knowing** the answer when the teacher asked her the question.

7 Complete the sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ His phone rang while he was doing the exam. (ring/do)
- 1 May _____ sweets when her tooth _____. (eat/break)
- 2 While I _____ the door, I _____ white paint on my trousers. (paint/get)
- 3 What _____ they _____ about when we _____ into the room? (talk/come)
- 4 While we _____ at the bus stop, we _____ an accident. (wait/see)
- 5 What _____ you _____ while you _____ with your mum? (buy/shop)
- 6 She _____ to the shops when someone _____ her handbag. (walk/steal)
- 7 While I _____ on the beach, my brother _____ for a swim. (lie/go)
- 8 Sam _____ on the bus when a bird _____ in through the window. (sit/fly)
- 9 _____ you _____ your phone while you _____ for the bus? (drop/run)
- 10 I _____ to music when my dad _____ me to switch it off. (listen/tell)

8 **8.3** Listen to Mary talking about her cousins' visit. Complete sentences 1–3 and then 4–7.

When her cousins arrived, ...

▶ Mary was doing her homework.

- 1 her dad _____.
- 2 her mum _____.
- 3 her brother _____.

The house was a mess, so ...

- 4 her aunt _____,
- 5 her uncle _____,
- 6 Mary _____ and _____ while
- 7 her cousins _____.

- 9 GAME** Play in pairs. Student A: say a past continuous sentence. Student B: add a 'when' clause. Use the verbs below.

clean make play read walk watch
arrive break hear fall over find phone

I was cleaning the cupboard when ...

... the door broke.

She was reading a newspaper when ...

... her teacher arrived.

- 10** Complete the text with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.



We were sitting (sit) in the back of a big jeep. No one ¹ _____ (talk). All of us ² _____ (look) intently through the windows of the car. Outside the African sun ³ _____ (shine), hot and bright, but nothing ⁴ _____ (move). Then suddenly, we ⁵ _____ (see) it – an elephant. It ⁶ _____ (appear) from a small group of trees and ⁷ _____ (start) to walk slowly towards the jeep. While it ⁸ _____ (come) towards us, I ⁹ _____ (get) my camera and ¹⁰ _____ (take) some photos. The elephant ¹¹ _____ (continue) in our direction. It was huge, much bigger than you ¹² _____ (can) imagine. Someone asked the guide, 'Is this dangerous? Will the elephant stop?' The guide ¹³ _____ (not say) anything. He switched off the car engine and ¹⁴ _____ (give) a signal to be silent. Now some of us were getting nervous. My hands ¹⁵ _____ (shake) and my heart ¹⁶ _____ (beat) very fast. The elephant ¹⁷ _____ (stop). It looked at the jeep for a long time. Then it simply ¹⁸ _____ (turn) around and ¹⁹ _____ (walk) back into the trees. Everyone breathed again. It was amazing!

- 11** Look at the information about Alex and his brother Richard. Write sentences using the past simple and past continuous.

Alex

August 1999 becomes a footballer
1999–2002 plays professional football
June 2002 breaks his leg and gives up football
January 2005 starts to learn Chinese
2006–2009 studies Chinese at university
August 2008 goes to the Beijing Olympics
2009–2011 works as a football coach in China

Richard

1998–2000 studies at school
October 2000 visits South America
2001–2004 studies Spanish at university
2005–2007 works for a company in England
May 2006 finds a job in Mexico
2006–2011 lives in Mexico
July 2010 gets married

- ▶ August 1999: Alex became a footballer while Richard was studying at school.

1 October 2000:

2 June 2002:

3 January 2005:

4 May 2006:

5 August 2008:

6 July 2010:

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			

9 Present perfect

I can use the present perfect tense with appropriate time expressions.

Present perfect



We use the present perfect to talk about events that happened in the past but we don't know when.
I've lost my phone. (= I lost it. I don't know when.)
He's visited Turkey and Russia. (= He visited both countries in the past. We don't know when.)

We often use the present perfect when a past event has some connection to now.
Someone has broken the chair. (= Here is the chair. We can see it is broken. We don't know when it happened.)
Sorry! I haven't found your purse. (= I am still looking for it now)

We don't use a finished time expression, like **yesterday** or **last year** with the present perfect, because it isn't important or we don't know when an event happened.
I've read that book.
I've read that book last year.

We can, however, use unfinished time expressions, for example, **ever**, **never**, **today**, **once**, **twice**. Note that **ever** and **never** go before the past participle.
I've never worked as a waiter.
'Have you ever sailed a boat?' 'No, I haven't.'
He's seen that film twice.
You've eaten a lot of chocolate today.
This is the first time I've ever played chess.

We can use **gone to** and **been to** in present perfect sentences. They have different meanings.
She's gone to China. (= She went to China and she's still there now.)
She's been to China. (= She went to China but she isn't there now.)

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Peter have / has been to Egypt.
- 1 We haven't / hasn't seen your bag.
- 2 I've / I given them some food.
- 3 Have / Has you ever tried this?
- 4 You aren't / haven't cleaned your teeth.
- 5 Have / Has the children done their homework?
- 6 Anna has watch / watched that film twice.
- 7 'Have you had dinner?' 'No, we haven't / hasn't.'
- 8 Have you read / read you those emails?

* 2 Write the past participles of the irregular verbs. Check your answers on page 176.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------------|----------|-------|
| ▶ break | <u>broken</u> | 8 run | _____ |
| 1 buy | _____ | 9 see | _____ |
| 2 do | _____ | 10 send | _____ |
| 3 eat | _____ | 11 speak | _____ |
| 4 fall | _____ | 12 spend | _____ |
| 5 have | _____ | 13 tell | _____ |
| 6 make | _____ | 14 win | _____ |
| 7 read | _____ | 15 write | _____ |



3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ Have you done the washing-up? (you/do)
- 1 _____ all the museums in the town. (we/visit)
- 2 _____ his bedroom. (he/not tidy)
- 3 _____ her new computer? (Helen/use)
- 4 _____ Fred today? (anyone/see)
- 5 _____ all her songs. (I/buy)
- 6 _____ English. (my parents/not learn)
- 7 _____ a lorry? (he/ever drive)
- 8 How many plates _____? (they/break)
- 9 _____ fish. (I/never eat)
- 10 'What's the matter?' 'I'm late and _____.' (the bus/not arrive)

4 **9.1** Read the information and listen to the examples. Then listen to the sentences and write *weak* or *strong*.

Weak	Strong
have /həv/ has /həz/	have /hæv/ has /hæz/
Affirmative sentences <i>Sam has been to Paris.</i>	Negative sentences <i>Sam hasn't been to Rome.</i>
Questions <i>Have you read this book?</i>	Short answers <i>Yes, I have.</i>

- ▶ Sam **has** been to Paris. weak
- ▶ Sam **hasn't** been to Rome. strong
- ▶ **Have** you read this book? weak
- ▶ Yes, I **have**. strong
- 1 **Has** John bought a new watch? _____
- 2 Yes, he **has**. _____
- 3 I **haven't** spoken to Jill today. _____
- 4 Your friends **have** made you a cake. _____
- 5 She **hasn't** phoned me. _____
- 6 Yes, they **have**. _____
- 7 **Have** you ever met someone famous? _____
- 8 Look! Your brother **has** fallen asleep. _____

5 **GAME** Work in pairs. Take eight objects and put them on the desk. Student A doesn't look and student B changes two items. Can student A see what has changed?

add move swap take away

- You've taken away the ruler.
- No, I haven't.
- You've swapped the pen for a pencil.
- Yes, I have.

6 **9.2** Lucy Pemberton is a 16-year-old who has done some amazing things in her life. What has she done? Listen and write *yes* or *no*.



▶ yes



3 _____



1 _____



4 _____



2 _____



5 _____

****7** Write sentences about the pictures in exercise 6.

earn any money do schoolwork
do a parachute jump sail through a storm
go to Australia win a prize

- ▶ Lucy has been to Australia _____.
- 1 She _____.
 - 2 She _____.
 - 3 She _____.
 - 4 She _____.
 - 5 She _____.

****8** Complete the text with the present perfect forms of the verbs in the box.

appear become not buy buy
never fly never learn not meet paint
pay spend win

Bill Ennis is an Australian artist. He has painted a lot of pictures and ¹_____ a lot of prizes. Famous people around the world ²_____ his pictures. As a result, he ³_____ rich. But Bill is different from most people. Although he has a lot of money, he ⁴_____ an expensive car or a big house. In fact, he ⁵_____ to drive and he still lives in the house that he grew up in.

So how ⁶_____ Bill _____ his money? He has created organizations that help people in poor countries. These organizations ⁷_____ for hundreds of children to go to school.

But Bill ⁸_____ these children or been to their countries. In fact, Bill has never left Australia, although his pictures ⁹_____ in exhibitions around the world. He is scared of flying so he ¹⁰_____ on a plane.



****9** Find information about a famous person who is still alive. Write sentences about their achievements. Use the ideas in the box to help you.



become very rich
build a big house
buy a fast car
help people in poor countries
learn another language
make films
meet famous people
travel around the world
win prizes
write a book

(famous person) has written four books and she has won some prizes. She has become famous but she hasn't become very rich.

****10** Write eight questions beginning *Have you ever ... ?* Use the words in the table.



Have you ever broken an arm or leg?

	✓/x
break an arm or leg	✓
do the washing up	
travel in a fast car	
forget your homework	
travel abroad	
look after a baby	
lose your phone	
speak in public	
swim in the sea	
win a prize	

****11** Work in pairs. Ask the questions from exercise 10 and complete the table. Write a tick ✓ or a cross x.

****12** GAME Now work with another pair in a group of four. Say sentences about your partner from exercise 11 – some true and some false. Can the other pair guess the false sentences?

She's never done the washing-up.

False.

You're right. That's false.

Present perfect with *just, already, yet* and *still*

We use the adverbs of time **just, already, yet** and **still** with the present perfect to show how we feel about events in time. We can use **just** with the present perfect in affirmative sentences. We use it to talk about a recent event. **Just** goes immediately after **have / has**.
They've just finished their exam. (= They finished their exam a short time ago.)
'I'm looking for Tom.' 'I've just seen him. He's in the corridor.'

We can also use **already** with the present perfect in affirmative sentences. We use it to say that an event happened sooner than we expected. **Already** goes immediately after **have/has**.
'When is the test?' 'We've already done it.'
'This is my brother.' 'I know. We've already met.'

We can use **yet** with the present perfect in negative sentences and questions. We use it to talk about something that has not happened but we expect that it will. **Yet** normally goes at the end of a sentence.
We haven't seen that film yet. (But we'll probably see it soon.)
Has Robert finished that book yet? (We expect him to finish it.)

We can use **still** in negative sentences to express a stronger meaning than **yet**. It means that something is going on longer than we expect. It goes before **hasn't/haven't**.
Robert still hasn't finished that book. (He's taking a long time to finish it.)

***13** Look at the pictures and write sentences with *just*.



► Hurray! My new phone has just arrived !
 (arrive)



1 Oh no! He _____ his dad's computer. (break)



2 Hurray! I've _____ my homework. (finish)



3 Oh no! The bus _____ . (leave)

***14** **GAME** Work in pairs. Student A says 'Oh no!' or 'Hurray!' Student B says a sentence with *just*.

spill/coffee
 drop/phone
 win/sports prize
 miss/the bus
 get/good mark in English

see/great film
 buy/new shoes
 break/a glass
 finish/exams

Oh no!

I've just spilt some coffee.

***15** Circle the correct option.

► She's already / yet bought some bread. 

- 1 They haven't finished their dinner **already** / yet.
- 2 Daisy hasn't gone to bed **already** / yet.
- 3 You've **already** / yet told us about your holiday.
- 4 Alex hasn't cleaned his bedroom **already** / yet.
- 5 I've **already** / yet sent the message.
- 6 Have you decided where you want to go to eat **already** / yet?

16 It is eight o'clock in the evening. What have Sarah and Robert done today? Look at the table and write sentences with *already* or *yet*.

	Sarah	Robert
have a shower	9.30 p.m.	7.30 a.m.
make bed	7.30 a.m.	8 a.m.
do a maths test	yesterday	tomorrow
practise the piano	7.30 a.m.	5.30 p.m.
finish dinner	7.30 p.m.	8.30 p.m.
watch TV	4 p.m.	8.30 p.m.
clean teeth	9.30 p.m.	9.30 p.m.

- ▶ Robert/have a shower
Robert has already had a shower.
- ▶ Sarah/have shower
Sarah hasn't had a shower yet.
- 1 Sarah and Robert/make their beds

- 2 Sarah/do a maths test

- 3 Robert/do a maths test

- 4 Sarah and Robert/practise the piano


- 5 Sarah/finish dinner

- 6 Robert/finish dinner

- 7 Sarah/watch TV

- 8 Robert/watch TV

- 9 Sarah and Robert/clean their teeth

17  Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the information in exercise 16.

Has Sarah had a shower yet?


No, she hasn't.

Yes, he has.


Has Robert had a shower yet?

18 Complete the text with *already*, *just*, *yet* or *still*.

- Katy Is it the first time you've been to London?
Sally Yes, and we've already seen lots of places.
Katy Have you been to Buckingham Palace
1 _____?
Sally Yes, we've 2 _____ seen that. We went there yesterday.
Katy What about the Tower of London?
Sally No, we 3 _____ haven't visited that. We'll probably go tomorrow.
Katy So what have you done this morning?
Sally We've 4 _____ been to Big Ben. We were there ten minutes ago. That was great.
Katy Have you been to Buckingham Palace
5 _____?
Sally Actually, we're waiting for a bus to go there now.
Katy Oh. You've 6 _____ missed it. The next bus is in twenty minutes.

19  **9.3** John is organizing a concert at school. Listen and write ✓ for things he has already done or ✗ for things he hasn't done yet.

Preparations	✓/✗
agree a date	✓
send letters to parents	
have auditions	
choose musicians	
write the programmes	
buy drinks	
make cakes	

20  Work in pairs. Imagine you are going away for the weekend and your parents are asking you about your preparations. Role-play the situation, using the words in the box and *already*, *yet* and *just*.

buy the train ticket charge your phone
clean your shoes find your camera
get some money have something to eat
pack your bag

Have you got everything ready?

Yes. Don't worry.
I've already packed my bag.

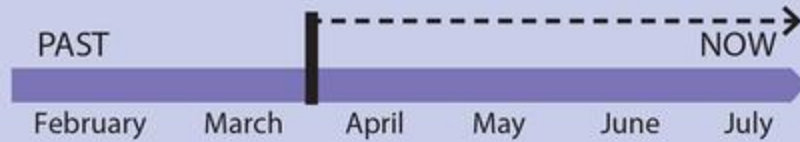
Have you charged your phone yet?

Present perfect with *since* and *for*

We use the present perfect with **since** or **for** to talk about situations that started in the past and are still continuing now.

I've been at this school since 2009. (= I started at this school in 2009. I am still at the school now.)

We've lived here for three months. (= We arrived three months ago. We still live here now.)



For + periods of time **Since + starting time in past**

three years	yesterday
two days	July
twenty minutes	2006
a long time	last year
	I was 12 years old

We do not use the present simple in these cases.

We live here for three years.

I am at this school since 2006.

We use **How long...?** to ask questions about situations that started in the past and are still continuing now.

'How long has she worked there?' 'For three years.'

'How long have you known him?' 'Since I was five.'

*21 Anna is happy. Write sentences about Anna with the Present perfect and *for* or *since*.

- ▶ be/on holiday/two weeks

She's been on holiday for two weeks.

- not/do any homework/a month

- not/go to bed early/last Sunday

- download/two new songs/yesterday

- not eat/school food/four weeks

- make/some new friends/last week

- sightsee/three days

- visit/four new places/Saturday

- read/two books/her holiday started

22

Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions with *How long ...?* and the ideas in the box. Answer using *since* or *for*.

be a student at this school
know your best friend
know your English teacher
your parents / live in this town
live in your house
have your shoes
have a mobile phone

How long have you been a student at this school?

I've been at school for six years.

I've been a student at this school since I was 12 years old.

23



Write sentences about your partner. Use *since* and *for*.

Helen has known her best friend for eight years.

Jason has lived in his house since 2011.

24

9.4 Complete the sentences with *ever*, *never*, *already*, *yet*, *just*, *still*, *since* or *for*. Listen and check your answers.

- ▶ 'Would you like to read this book?' 'No, thanks. I've already read it.'

- 'Have you _____ met the Prime Minister?' 'Yes. Once.'
- Harry has had that phone _____ five years!
- We haven't been to the shops _____.
- Don't touch the door! I've _____ painted it.
- 'Do you like skiing?' 'I don't know. I've _____ done it.'
- My mum has loved singing _____ she was a little girl.
- John has known Alex _____ a very long time.
- 'Let's watch this DVD!' 'I'm sorry, but I've _____ seen it.'
- Tom _____ hasn't finished his homework. It's ten o'clock!
- Have they finished playing football _____?
- 'Do you know Sam?' 'No. I've _____ met him.'

25 Look at the timetables for university interviews. Read the sentences and write the correct names.

Vicky	
9.35	arrive
10.00	meet students
11.00	interview
1.00	lunch
2.00	look around campus
3.30	home

Mary	
10.35	arrive
11.00	look around campus
12.30	lunch
1.00	interview
3.30	meet students
4.30	home

Kim	
11.35	arrive
12.00	look around campus
1.00	lunch
2.30	meet students
3.30	interview
5.30	home

It's now 1.35 p.m.

- ▶ She's just started her interview. Mary
- 1 She's already had her interview. _____
- 2 She's been here for three hours. _____
- 3 They haven't met any students yet. _____
- 4 She's been here since 9.35. _____
- 5 She hasn't looked around the campus yet. _____
- 6 She's been here for two hours. _____
- 7 They still haven't finished lunch. _____
- 8 They've already looked around the campus. _____

26 Write the sentences correctly.

- ▶ They don't have tidied their room yet.
They haven't tidied their room yet.
- 1 I done the washing-up twice today.

- 2 I haven't still finished.

- 3 Has Tony woke up yet?

- 4 It hasn't rained since two weeks.

- 5 The train has arrived just.

- 6 They haven't made dinner still.

- 7 My parents live here for twenty years.

- 8 You haven't failed never an exam.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊 😊😊 😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			

10 Present perfect and past simple

I can use the present perfect and past simple to describe finished and unfinished events.



Present perfect

We use the present perfect to talk about events that happened in the past but we don't know when they happened, or the exact time is not important. There is often a connection to the present.

He's broken his leg. (= His leg is broken now, but I don't know when it happened.)

I've lost my phone. (= I can't find my phone and I don't know exactly when I lost it.)

We use the present perfect with 'unfinished' time expressions (for example, **never, ever, this week, twice, yet**). See Unit 9.

I've read three books this week.

We use the present perfect with **for** + a period of time when the event is still in progress.

I've lived here for two years. (= I live here now.)

We use the present perfect to talk about events in a living person's life.

Suzanne Collins has written some good books.
(She will probably write more books in the future.)

Past simple

We use the past simple when we talk about events that finished in the past.

I lost my old phone. I bought a new one last week.

Harry broke his leg six months ago, but he's OK now.

Did you buy a new jacket on Saturday?

What did you have for breakfast?

We use the past simple with 'finished' time expressions (for example, **yesterday, on Monday, in 2010**).

Did you go to America in 2010?

I read three books last week.

We use the past simple with **for** + a period of time when the event finished in the past.

I lived here for two years. (= I don't live here now.)

We use the past simple to talk about events in the life of someone who is now dead.

Shakespeare wrote a lot of great plays. (He died, so he won't write any more plays.)

* 1 Underline the verbs and write PP (present perfect) or PS (past simple).

- ▶ We went to France on holiday. PS
- ▶ They 've listened to that song a hundred times.

PP

- 1 She spent all her money at the shops. _____
- 2 They've decided to paint their bedroom. _____
- 3 I haven't finished my breakfast yet. _____
- 4 Did you pass the exam? _____

- 5 He's read all those books. _____
- 6 Has Peter used his new tennis racket? _____
- 7 Did you like the film? _____
- 8 I read the information on the website. _____
- 9 Has it snowed? _____
- 10 It didn't finish at eight o'clock. _____



**2 Write these irregular past simple forms and past participles in the correct column. Remember: some words can go in both columns.

drank run had bought spoke

left written done drunk made

ran read chose spoken did

took chosen taken wrote

past simple	past participle
drank	run

3 **GAME Work in groups of four. Student A says the infinitive form of an irregular verb, student B says the past simple form and student C says the past participle. Student D says a new verb. Continue round the group. Lose a point for any incorrect forms.

Write

wrote

written

Drink

**4 Can you use these time expressions with the present perfect? Write ✓ or x.



- ▶ never ✓
- ▶ yesterday x
- 1 last week ____
- 2 already ____
- 3 in 2011 ____
- 4 on Monday ____
- 5 today ____
- 6 yet ____
- 7 three years ago ____
- 8 for two years ____
- 9 at seven o'clock ____
- 10 twice ____
- 11 after lunch ____
- 12 since three o'clock ____

**5 Tick (✓) the correct time expression. Then write it in the correct place in the sentence.

▶ It snowed ^{on Monday} ~~on Monday~~ already
It snowed on Monday.

1 I've been to Australia.
 last year never

2 Have you found any money in the street?
 yesterday ever

3 Katy started secondary school.
 in 2011 already

4 They've had that car.
 three years ago for three years

5 I sent you an email.
 at two o'clock just

6 Fred hasn't had a shower.
 before breakfast yet

7 He's decided not to go.
 yesterday already

8 We've been here.
 two hours ago since three o'clock

9 Did he die?
 in 2001 yet

10 Have you seen William?
 at two o'clock today

6 Complete the sentences or questions using the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ Sam went to hospital last week. (Sam/go)
- _____ your sports kit yesterday? (you/forget)
 - _____ never _____ banana ice cream. (I/eat)
 - _____ in China three days ago. (It/snow)
 - _____ already _____ me your new shoes. (you/show)
 - _____ there for three years, but it was boring, so he found another job. (Tom/work)
 - _____ that song since I was eleven. (I/not hear)
 - _____ married on 3 July, 1995. (My parents/get)
 - _____ ever _____ a horse? (you/ride)
 - Vicky _____ for her ticket yet. (not/pay)
 - Why _____ you _____ the bus on Monday? (take)

7 **10.1** Circle the correct option. Listen and check.

- ▶ Harry bought / has bought a new watch but then he lost it.
- ▶ I bought / have bought a new pen. Look! Do you want to try it?
- They **went** / **have been** to Istanbul, Marmaris and Bodrum while they were in Turkey.
 - We **went** / **have been** to London and Oxford. We're really enjoying our trip to England.
 - The train **arrived** / **has arrived**. Let's get on.
 - They **arrived** / **have arrived** at six and left at half past seven.
 - Charlotte Brontë was a writer. She **wrote** / **has written** four novels.
 - Zac Efron is an actor. He **made** / **has made** a lot of films.
 - Sam was cold because he **forgot** / **has forgotten** his coat.
 - 'Can I have your homework?' 'Oh no! I **forgot** / **have forgotten** it.'
 - 'Are you hungry?' 'Yes, I am. I **didn't have** / **haven't had** anything to eat today.'
 - He wasn't hungry, so he **didn't eat** / **hasn't eaten** anything.

8 **10.2** Read the sentences below. Then listen to an interview with a famous architect. Are the sentences correct ✓ or incorrect x?

- ▶ Sandra was an architect for 30 years, but she doesn't work now. x
- The Eldon School has been open for two years. _____
 - She's just won the Congress Prize in America. _____
 - Sandra has lived in America for ten years. _____
 - She lives in London now. _____
 - They've already finished the new swimming centre. _____

9 Complete the sentences with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs.

- ▶ He opened the cupboard and took _____ out the coffee. (take)
- ▶ 'She looks happy.' 'Yes. She 's won _____ the music competition.' (win)
- 'Would you like to watch this DVD?' 'Yes, please. I _____ that film.' (not see)
 - The teacher entered the room and the children _____ up. (stand)
 - The rain _____ while she was walking home. (stop)
 - '_____ you _____ a new jacket?' 'Yes. It's cool, isn't it?' (buy)
 - They went to New York but they _____ the Museum of Modern Art. (not visit)
 - 'Do you like her music?' 'Yes. I _____ all her songs.' (download)
 - My phone isn't working. Someone _____ it. (break)
 - _____ you _____ on the plane when you flew to Australia? (sleep)
 - She _____ her homework before school. (do)
 - '_____ it _____ raining?' 'Yes. Let's go and play tennis.' (stop)

10 **10.3** Paul's parents are out for the day. His mother is phoning to check if he has done his jobs. Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.



Mum: Hello, Paul. Is everything OK?
 Paul: Yes, thanks, Mum.
 Mum: Have you cleaned (clean) your room yet?
 Paul: Ah. There was a problem. I ¹ _____ (get) the vacuum cleaner out and ² _____ (try) to turn it on. But it ³ _____ (not work).
 Mum: Oh. That's a shame. So ⁴ _____ you _____ (do) the shopping?
 Paul: Well, I ⁵ _____ (go) to the supermarket in the morning, but I ⁶ _____ (forget) my wallet, so I couldn't actually buy anything.
 Mum: Oh, Paul! What about your homework?
 Paul: ⁷ _____ you _____ (finish) that yet?
 Paul: No, I'm sorry. I ⁸ _____.
 Mum: Why not?
 Paul: Well, I ⁹ _____ (lend) my maths book to Tom yesterday. So when I ¹⁰ _____ (look) in my bag this morning, the book wasn't there.
 Mum: I can't believe it. So what ¹¹ _____ you _____ (do) today?
 Paul: I ¹² _____ (watch) TV.
 Mum: At least you ¹³ _____ (not break) the TV yet!



3 read the book



4 make dinner



5 pay for the ticket

Have you done the washing-up yet?

No, I'm sorry. I cut my finger this morning, so I couldn't do it.

11 Work in pairs. Student A: ask a question with the present perfect. Student B: look at the picture and give an excuse with the past simple and a time expression.



▶ do the washing-up



1 phone the dentist



2 practise the guitar

12 Complete the email with the present perfect or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Hi Ben

We're in England! We've been on holiday in Wales for almost two weeks.


Last week ¹ _____ (not be) very good. We ² _____ (want) to go to the beach, but it ³ _____ (rain) every day. So we ⁴ _____ (drive) around and ⁵ _____ (visit) museums. But then the car ⁶ _____ (break) down.

So, after that, we ⁷ _____ (stay) in the apartment and ⁸ _____ (argue) with each other!

But this week ⁹ _____ (be) great. The weather ¹⁰ _____ (improve) and we ¹¹ _____ (go) to the beach every day. My brother ¹² _____ (play) tennis every day and my parents ¹³ _____ (read) four books. I still ¹⁴ _____ (not swim) in the sea yet, but I think I'll do that tomorrow!

See you soon!

Frank

13  Now imagine you are on holiday and write what you would say in a short email.

*We're on holiday in ...
We've been here for ...
Last week was terrible...
But this week has been much better ...*

14 Look at the information about Sarah's life. Then write sentences using the present perfect or past simple and *since, for, ago* or *when*.

Age	
0-18	lives in Manchester
18-21	studies biochemistry at university in London
21	starts a job with SciTech in London
25	gets a new job with Smart Labs in London
27	meets Ben
29	gets married to Ben
31	buys a house in Hertford, 30 minutes from London
34	NOW

Sarah is 34 years old. She lives in Hertford. She works for Smart Labs and is married to Ben.

- ▶ Sarah/live in Manchester/for
She lived in Manchester for 18 years.
- ▶ She/move to London/when
She moved to London when she was 18.
- ▶ She/know Ben/since
She has known Ben since she was 27.

- 1 Sarah/go to university/ago

- 2 She/study biochemistry/for

- 3 Sarah/finish university/when

- 4 She/work for SciTech/for


- 5 She/work for SmartLabs/for

- 6 She/live in Hertford/since

- 7 Ben/meet Sarah/ago

- 8 Sarah and Ben/be married/for




- 9 They/buy house/ago

15  Now write true sentences about yourself using the present perfect or past simple and the time expressions in the box. You can change the times in bold.

for three years	since I was eleven
just	two years ago
in July	when I was six
last week	yesterday
never	yet

*I've known my friend John for six years.
I learnt to read when I was five.*

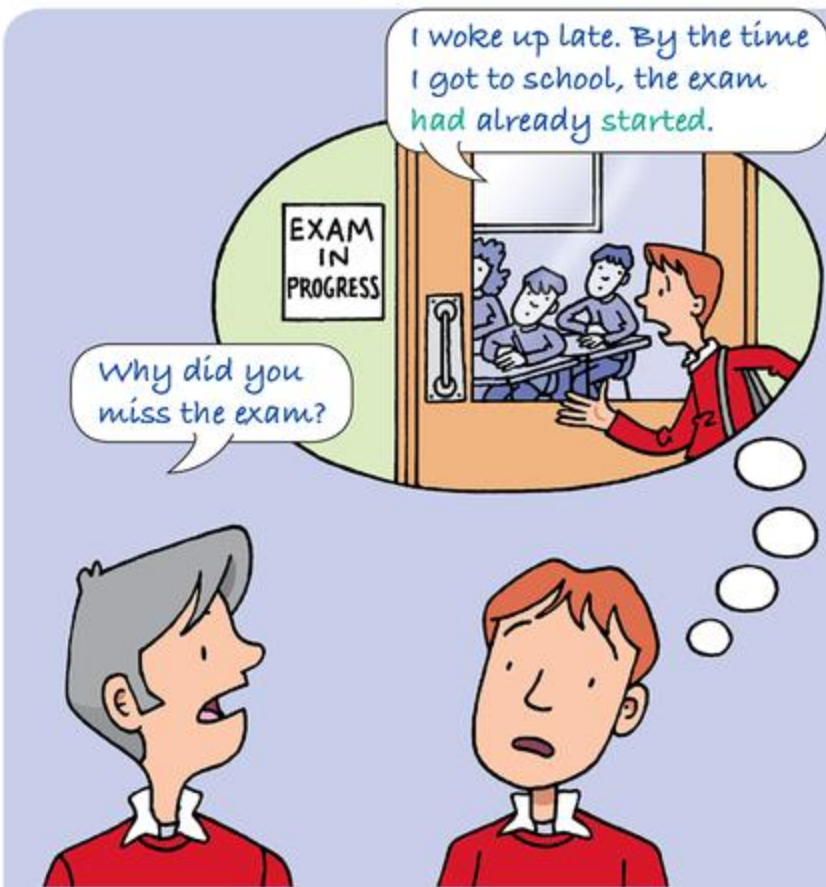
Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

			
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			

11

Past perfect

I can form and use the past perfect tense with appropriate time expressions.



When we are already talking about the past, we use the past perfect to talk about events that happened at an earlier time.

*We went to the cinema last night, but Michael stayed at home. He **had seen** the film before. (= We saw the film last night. Michael saw the film before that.)*

When we talk about the past using the past simple, we normally put events in the order they happened.
*We **ate** a big lunch. Then we **slept** for two hours!*

We often use the past perfect with the past simple to show that events are not in the order they happened.
*We **slept** for two hours. We'd **eaten** a big lunch!*

We often use the past perfect in sentences with conjunctions like **when**, **by the time**, **before**, **after**.
***By the time** she arrived at the station, the train **had** already left.*

*I **hadn't packed** my bags **when** the taxi arrived.
Had you read the book **before** you saw the film?*

We can use **already**, **just**, **never** with the past perfect. We put these words before the past participle.
*I'd **just started** my homework when my friend phoned.
She'd **never been** to London, so she was looking forward to the trip.*

We can also use the past perfect with the phrase **It was the first time ...**

*We went to India last year. **It was the first time I'd ever travelled** on a plane.*

See page 175 for the form table.

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ She went back to school because she'd **left** / **leaved** her bag in the classroom.
- 1 Sam wanted to pay but he'd **forgot** / **forgotten** his wallet.
- 2 When he woke up, everyone **had finished** / **finished** breakfast.
- 3 I've / I'd just repaired the bike, when Harry crashed it again.
- 4 They **had** / **did** spent all their money, so they couldn't take the bus home.
- 5 It was only eight o'clock but **she'd already fallen** / **she already fell** asleep.
- 6 Jill and Lucy weren't there. Where **they had** / **had they** gone?
- 7 By the time Dickens died, how many books **he had** / **had he** written?
- 8 Peter didn't understand the homework because he **didn't** / **hadn't** listened to the teacher.

* 2 Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ Ben had eaten two burgers but he was still hungry. (eat)
- 1 Sally _____ the book but she couldn't remember the story. (read)
- 2 Although he _____ a ticket, he decided not to go to the concert. (buy)
- 3 His mum was angry because he _____ his room. (not tidy)
- 4 William decided to celebrate because he _____ his exam. (pass)
- 5 By the time they arrived at the shop, it _____ . (close)
- 6 Lucy _____ the news when Helen phoned her. (not hear)
- 7 It was the first time we _____ her. (meet)
- 8 After Jim _____ enough money, he bought himself a new phone. (save)

3 **11.1** Complete the sentences with *just*, *already* or *never* and the past perfect form of the verb in brackets. Listen and check.



- ▶ She'd *already been* there for two hours when her friends arrived. (be)
- 1 They were really tired. They _____ playing football. (finish)
- 2 Tom was nervous. He _____ before. (fly)
- 3 She felt sick. She _____ two pieces of chocolate cake. (eat)
- 4 Her grandmother didn't know what to do. She _____ a computer before. (use)
- 5 I _____ asleep when the sound of the phone woke me up again. (fall)

- 6 Mary _____ Paris twice but she wanted to go again. (visit)
- 7 This was Vicky's first race. She _____ in a competition before. (run)
- 8 Robert _____ the trousers, so he couldn't take them back to the shop. (wear)
- 9 We were lucky. We _____ at the cinema when the film started. (arrive)
- 10 I tried to open the door, but the key didn't work. I couldn't understand it. This _____ before. (happen)

4 **GAME** Peter went away for a week on a school trip. He came back a week later and his bedroom looked very different. What had his parents done? Look at the pictures and write sentences with the past perfect.

- ▶ *They'd emptied the bin.*
- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____

5 Look at the example. What had you done by the time you were eight? Ask and answer questions using the verbs below or your own ideas.

buy a mobile phone travel on a plane
 learn to swim sleep in a tent
 start English lessons walk to school alone

Had you learnt to swim?

Yes, I had.



6 **11.2** Listen. Which event happened first? Write 1 and 2.



- ▶ Bill arrived at the station. 2
His friends bought tickets. 1
- 1 Bill arrived at the station.
His friends bought tickets.
- 2 Katy went to a café.
She met Sue.
- 3 Katy went to a café.
She met Sue.
- 4 It started to rain.
They stopped playing.
- 5 It started to rain.
They stopped playing.
- 6 John's family had breakfast.
He woke up.
- 7 John's family had breakfast.
He woke up.
- 8 He crossed the road.
He saw Fred.
- 9 He crossed the road.
He saw Fred.

7 Circle the correct options.

- ▶ Paul **didn't finish** / **hadn't finished** the exam when the teacher **said** / **had said**, 'Stop!'
- 1 When I **looked** / **had looked** at my watch, it **stopped** / **had stopped**.
- 2 This was her first visit to Paris. In fact, she **never went** / **had never been** abroad before.
- 3 They **didn't play** / **hadn't played** tennis because Anna **forgot** / **had forgotten** her racket.
- 4 By the time we **reached** / **had reached** the ski resort, it **started** / **had started** snowing.
- 5 When the show **ended** / **had ended**, all the restaurants **closed** / **had closed**.
- 6 Harry **already cleaned** / **had already cleaned** his teeth before he **had** / **had had** breakfast.
- 7 Daisy **screamed** / **had screamed** because she **just saw** / **had just seen** a spider.
- 8 Lucy **knew** / **had known** Tom for two years when they **got** / **had got** married.
- 9 Where **did everyone go** / **had everyone gone** when she **needed** / **had needed** help with the washing-up?
- 10 He **didn't win** / **hadn't won** the race because he **didn't practise** / **hadn't practised** enough.

8 Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence, using the past simple and past perfect.

- ▶ Mary ate dinner. Then she met her friends.
Mary had eaten dinner when she met her friends.
- ▶ Robert got up early. But he didn't feel tired.
Although Robert had got up early, he didn't feel tired.
- 1 She lived in Spain for six years. Then she went to university.
She _____ when _____.
- 2 Jack didn't read my email. Then I phoned him.
He _____ when _____.
- 3 I had a shower. Then I got dressed.
After _____, I _____.
- 4 I bought a ticket for the cinema. Then Alex invited me to a party.
I _____ when _____.
- 5 Jane learnt some Chinese at school. But she didn't understand people in Beijing.
Although _____, she _____.
- 6 She made 25 films. Then she won her first award.
By the time _____, she _____.
- 7 Someone stole my wallet. I couldn't pay for the bus.
I _____ because _____.
- 8 They ate a lot of chocolate. Then they had lunch.
They _____ before _____.
- 9 I cleaned my room. Then my parents gave me my pocket money.
My parents _____ after _____.

9

Work in pairs. Student A says a sentence starting *By the time ...*, using a verb from box A. Student B completes the sentence using a verb from box B.

A arrive at school film start find my money
get home lesson finish leave school

B fall asleep go home have dinner
miss the bus lesson start shops close

By the time the film started ...

he'd fallen asleep.

10 11.3 Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.



In 1860, Robert Burke and William Wills started (start) an expedition to travel across Australia from south to north. No white man ¹ _____ (ever do) this before, and one year earlier the government ² _____ (offer) a prize to the first people to do it.

Burke and Wills ³ _____ (organize) a group of nineteen men and set off in August. Three months later, they ⁴ _____ (arrive) at Cooper Creek. Then Burke, Wills and five other men ⁵ _____ (continue) their journey to the north coast. The rest of the men established a camp at Cooper Creek and ⁶ _____ (wait) for them to return.

By the time they reached the north coast in February 1861, Burke and Wills ⁷ _____ (travel) 2,000 miles across two deserts. But the journey ⁸ _____ (took) 60 days instead of 45 days and, as a result, they ⁹ _____ (already eat) most of their food.

The return journey was terrible. They ¹⁰ _____ (be) hungry and tired and the desert was incredibly hot. When they finally ¹¹ _____ (arrive) back at Cooper Creek on the 21st of April, the other men ¹² _____ (leave). Burke and Wills had asked them to wait for thirteen weeks and in fact, they ¹³ _____ (wait) for eighteen weeks. In the end, they ¹⁴ _____ (abandon) the camp only nine hours before Burke and Wills ¹⁵ _____ (return).

Burke and Wills didn't have the strength to travel any further and both men ¹⁶ _____ (die) in June 1861.

11



Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence, using the linking words in brackets. Change the order of the sentences and use the past perfect where necessary. Add extra details to make the story more interesting.

- ▶ We decided to go to the beach. We got up early on Saturday. (because)
We got up early on Saturday because we'd decided to go to the beach. It was lovely weather so we packed our swimming things.
- 1 It started raining. We arrived at the beach. (by the time)

- 2 I didn't eat breakfast. I was hungry. (so)

- 3 Mum forgot to pack the food. We decided to eat our picnic. (but)

- 4 We bought and ate some sandwiches. It stopped raining. (after)

- 5 I brought a ball with me in the car. We played games on the beach. (so)

- 6 All the other people went. We left the beach. (when)

- 7 I fell asleep in the car. We arrived home. (by the time)

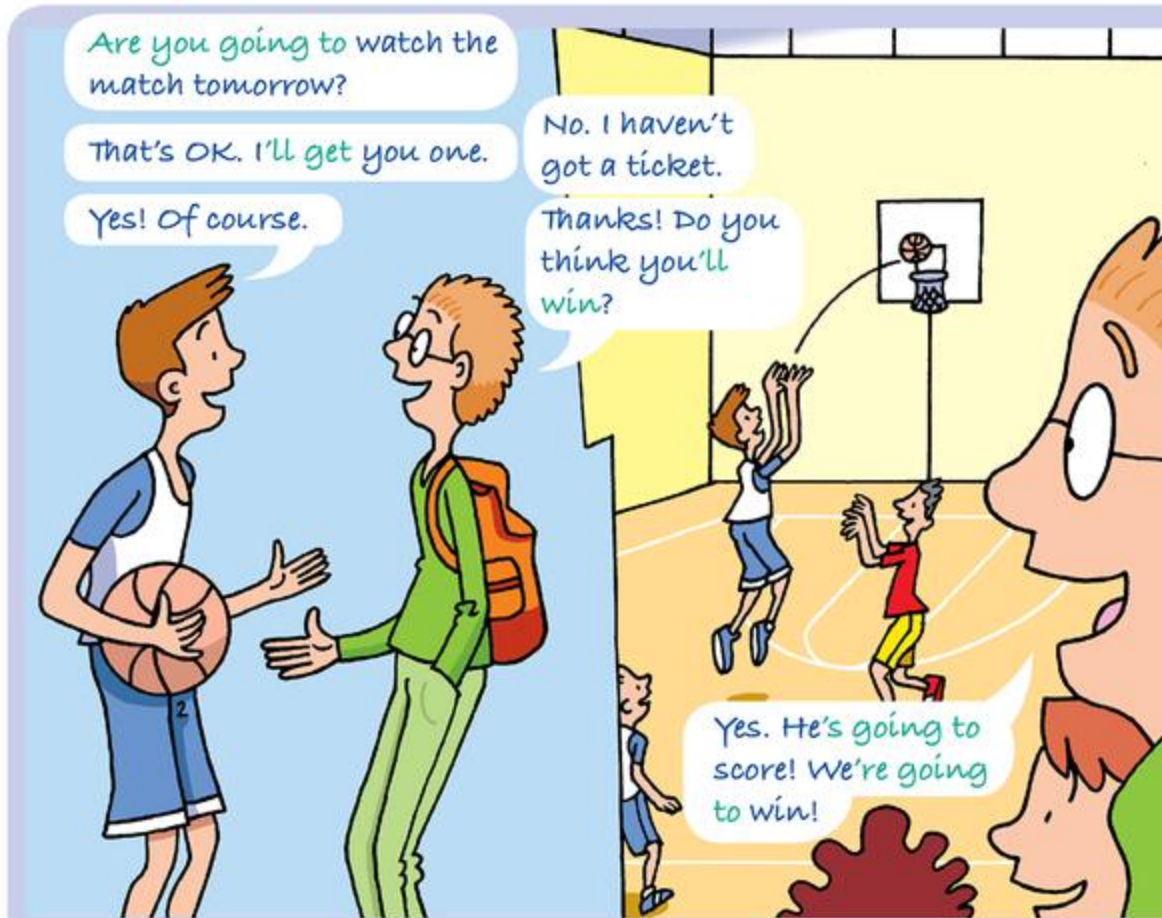
Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			

12 The future

I can use *be going to*, *will* and the present continuous to talk about the future.

Be going to



We use **be going to** + the infinitive to ask and talk about plans and intentions.
I'm going to play basketball tomorrow.
What are you going to do at the weekend?

We can also use **be going to** to predict the future because of what we see or what is happening now.
That bus is too tall. It's going to crash into the bridge.
It's six o'clock. We're too late. We aren't going to catch the train.'

Note: we can form the negative in two ways.
We aren't going to catch the train.
We're not going to catch the train.

* 1 12.1 Read the text in the box. Then listen and repeat.

When we say the words 'going to', we normally use a weak pronunciation: /tə/.

- 1 I'm going to play football.
- 2 What are you going to do?
- 3 They're going to be here soon.
- 4 He's not going to stay long.

* 2 Complete each *going to* sentence with one word.

- ▶ He's going to paint the dining room tomorrow.
- 1 'Mike _____ going to play basketball this afternoon.' 'So am I.'
 - 2 What are you _____ to do on Sunday?
 - 3 The music is very loud. I _____ going to turn it down.
 - 4 'Is Tom going to study geography?' 'Yes, he _____.'
 - 5 Where are you going _____ go on holiday?
 - 6 'When are you going to _____ your homework?' 'I've already done it.'

* 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *going to* and the verb in brackets.

- ▶ Pat is going to win the competition. (Pat/win)
- 1 Look out of the window. _____ hot today. (It/be)
 - 2 Be careful with those glasses. _____ them. (you/break)
 - 3 _____ the exam. She hasn't done much revision. (She/not pass)
 - 4 '_____ there in time?' 'Yes! The bus leaves in ten minutes.' (we/get)
 - 5 _____ soon. I can see some blue sky. (The rain/stop)
 - 6 _____ to play the guitar well. You don't practise. (you/not learn)
 - 7 They're very tired. _____ the race. (They/not finish)
 - 8 '_____?' 'I don't think so. It's too warm.' (it/snow)

- 4** **12.2** Listen to Ed talking to his grandfather about plans for his birthday. Write ✓ or ✗ in the table.

see friends	✓	have coffee and cakes	
play football		cook chicken and rice	
karting		make a cake	
eight friends		buy biscuits	
go to a café		watch a DVD	
have lunch		do homework	

- 5** Read the sentences. Are they predictions (P) or intentions (I)?

- ▶ Dinner is going to be ready soon. P
 - ▶ Frank is going to make dinner tonight. I
- 1 I'm going to study hard so I can go to university. _____
 - 2 She isn't going to get into university. She doesn't study very hard. _____
 - 3 We're going to arrive early. There isn't very much traffic. _____
 - 4 I'm going to get up early and do some revision tomorrow. _____
 - 5 Carrie is going to feel tired. She's working very hard today. _____
 - 6 Ryan says he is going to work in a café in the summer. _____
 - 7 I'm going to watch that programme. It looks interesting. _____

- 6** Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using *going to*.

do your homework	this evening
watch TV	tomorrow
play sport	on Saturday
meet your friends	on Sunday
go shopping	next summer
go to bed late	

Are you going to go to bed late this evening?

No, I'm not, because I have school tomorrow. But I'm going to go to bed late on Saturday. Are you going to play sport tomorrow?

- 7** **GAME** Student A turn to page 168. Student B turn to page 170.

Will/Shall

We use **will** + the infinitive when we make a decision at the time of speaking.

'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll **have** some coffee, please.'

'The phone's ringing.' 'I'll **get** it.'

We also use **will** for predictions, when we guess the future. We often use it with words like *probably* or *I (don't) think*.

I think we'll **win** the match on Sunday.

Your plan **won't** work.

'Who **will** read my blog?' 'I don't know.'

'Will you live somewhere different in the future?' 'No, I probably **won't**.'

We also use **will** for offers, promises and refusals.

'I haven't got time to make dinner tonight.' 'No problem. I'll **do** it.' (= offer)

'You always arrive late.' 'I'm sorry. I'll **get** here on time tomorrow.' (= promise)

We've asked Pete and Ryan, but they **won't** help us. (= refusal)

We can also use **will** for requests.

Will you buy me some bread, please?

We use **Shall I ...?** and **Shall we ...?** for offers and suggestions.

Shall I do the washing-up? Yes, please.

Shall we go to the cinema tonight? Yes, good idea.

- 8** Complete the sentences with the correct form of *will* and the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ He won't hear you. He's listening to loud music. (not hear)
- 1 Fred _____ dinner when he gets home. (make)
 - 2 'How _____ you _____ there?' 'By bus, probably.' (get)
 - 3 She probably _____ on time. She hasn't left home yet. (not arrive)
 - 4 '_____ you _____ the address?' 'Yes. I've got a good memory.' (remember)
 - 5 Tanya _____ her exams. She always studies hard. (pass)
 - 6 'I've cooked tuna.' 'Julia probably _____ it. She doesn't like fish.' (not eat)
 - 7 'William hasn't arrived yet.' 'Don't worry. He _____ here soon.' (be)
 - 8 They probably _____ up early tomorrow. It's the weekend. (not get)
 - 9 Be careful! You _____ yourself. (hurt)
 - 10 '_____ Ivy _____ to the cinema tonight?' 'No, she _____. She's away on holiday.' (go)

9 Complete the sentences with *will* for predictions or *shall* for offers and suggestions.

- ▶ 'What do you want to do?' 'shall we go to the cinema?'
- 'We're going to the beach.' '_____ I need suncream?'
 - 'We haven't got any bread.' '_____ I buy some?'
 - 'I'm hungry.' '_____ I make you a sandwich?'
 - '_____ we arrive soon?' 'Yes, in about five minutes.'
 - 'Do you want fish or chicken?' '_____ we have fish?'
 - '_____ I enjoy this film?' 'I think so.'
 - '_____ we take the bus?' 'Yes. That will be quicker.'
 - '_____ we hear the phone? The music's very loud.'

10 Read the sentences. What is the use of *will* in each sentence? Match the sentences 1–9 to the uses a–e.

- ▶ 'This bag is heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.' b
- 'Can I have your homework?' 'I'll bring it tomorrow.' _____
 - Beth will know the answer. She knows everything! _____
 - 'I haven't got my wallet.' 'No problem. I'll buy the tickets.' _____
 - 'What should I do?' 'Talk to your parents. They'll help you.' _____
 - My parents won't buy me a new phone. They say I don't need one. _____
 - 'Can you keep a secret?' 'Of course. I won't tell anyone.' _____
 - I've tried everything, but he won't listen to me. _____
 - You can use Kim's pen. She won't mind. _____
 - 'Where's Emily?' 'I don't know. I'll phone her.' _____

- a decision at the time of speaking
- an offer
- a promise
- a refusal
- a prediction based on a guess

11 **12.3** Listen to the dialogue and write the missing words. Use *will* and the verbs in the box, and a pronoun if necessary.



be buy find get have to make
need need rain take try

- Dad** It's a beautiful day today. Shall we go for a walk in the mountains?
- Toby** That's a great idea. What do I need?
- Dad** You'll need your boots, of course.
- Toby** OK. ¹_____ them. But I think they may be dirty.
- Dad** Well, ²_____ clean them quickly.
- Toby** OK, I'll do that.
- Dad** ³_____ the rucksacks – and I'll take waterproof jackets, too. It probably ⁴_____, but you never know in the mountains.
- Toby** ⁵_____ some food?
- Dad** Yes, we will.
- Toby** OK. ⁶_____ some sandwiches now.
- Dad** Good, and I ⁷_____ some chocolate at the shop on the way.
- Toby** How about water? It's hot today.
- Dad** You're right. ⁸_____ two big bottles. And don't forget your hat or you'll get sunburnt! OK. ⁹_____ ready in fifteen minutes?
- Toby** ¹⁰_____!

12 How will schools be different in the future? Work in pairs and take turns to make predictions. Use the words below or your own ideas.

do	computers
learn	English
need	exams
study	pens
use	teachers
wear	textbooks
	uniforms

I think students will do exams on computers.

Yes, I agree, and they probably won't use any textbooks.

Present continuous

We can use the **present continuous** to talk about the future when we are talking about a definite plan. We often include a time expression.

I'm seeing Linda at three o'clock tomorrow. (= I spoke to Linda yesterday and we agreed to meet.)

He's working in Manchester next week. (= His company asked him to go to Manchester.)

For other uses of the present continuous, see Unit 6, page 31.

*13 Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ Peter/meeting/six o'clock/we're/at
We're meeting Peter at six o'clock.
- 1 arriving/my cousins/on Sunday/are
_____?
- 2 you/football/this afternoon/are/playing/?
_____?
- 3 tonight/cooking/not/dinner/I'm
_____?
- 4 London/driving/on Friday/is/to/Gemma
_____?
- 5 leaving/the school/our teacher/in July/is
_____?
- 6 your parents/to/are/when/the theatre/going/?
_____?
- 7 until/not/5 March/coming/he's
_____?
- 8 you/Monday/doing/are/what/next/?
_____?

*14 12.4 Amy and Yasmin are trying to arrange a time to meet. Listen and complete the table.

Time	OK?	Why not?
Saturday 9 a.m.		
Saturday 10.30 a.m.		
Saturday afternoon	x	Yasmin is going to the dentist
Sunday afternoon		
Sunday evening		

*15

GAME

Write the events below in the diary, but don't show your partner. Keep two spaces blank. Then talk to your partner and try to find a time when you can meet.

go shopping have a music lesson
see a film at the cinema play basketball
meet some friends visit grandparents
have dinner with family

Time	Event
Wednesday evening	
Thursday evening	
Friday evening	
Saturday morning	
Saturday afternoon	
Saturday evening	
Sunday morning	
Sunday afternoon	
Sunday evening	

Would you like to come to my house to watch a DVD this weekend?

Yes, I'd love to come. Are you doing anything on Friday evening?

I'm sorry, I'm playing basketball then. How about Saturday morning?



Will or going to?

Decisions

We use **will** when we make a decision at the moment of speaking.

'Look at your shoes! They're really dirty.'
'I'm sorry. I'll clean them.'

We use **going to** when we have already decided to do something.

'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them now.'

Predictions

We use **will** to predict what we think or guess will happen.

I think it **will rain** tomorrow.

We use **going to** when we know what will happen because of something we can see.

Look at those dark clouds! It's **going to rain**.

*16 Look at the pictures and the sentences. Match the sentences to the pictures.



- 1 Will you open the window?
- 2 I'm going to mend your bike.
- 3 I'm going to buy some bread.
- 4 Don't worry. I'll mend your bike.
- 5 No problem. I'll go to the shop and buy some bread.
- 6 Are you going to open the window?

*17 Circle the correct option.



► 'Someone's stolen my bike, so I can't get home.' 'No problem. I'll / I'm going to drive you.'

- 1 Vicky phoned me last night. We'll / We're going to see the film tomorrow.
- 2 'It's her birthday on Saturday.' 'I didn't know that. I'll / I'm going to make her a cake.'
- 3 'Have you decided what to do?' 'Yes. I'll / I'm going to write them an email.'
- 4 'She passed the entrance exam for the university.' 'What will she / is she going to study?'
- 5 'It's dark in here.' 'I'll / I'm going to turn the light on.'
- 6 'He looks very tired.' 'Yes, I know. He won't / He isn't going to win.'
- 7 'Has he bought the paint?' 'Yes. He'll / He's going to start decorating tomorrow.'
- 8 'I don't like this song.' 'OK. I'll / I'm going to play a different track.'
- 9 'It's just started to rain.' 'Oh no. I'll / I'm going to get my coat.'
- 10 Look at that man on the roof. He's being very stupid. He'll / He's going to fall off.

18 **12.5** Complete the text with the correct form of *will* or *going to* and the verb in brackets. Listen and check.



Mum: I'm getting things ready for our picnic.
 Robert: A picnic?
 Mum: Yes. I told you about it last week. We're going to the lake. Jason and his family
 1 _____ (meet) us there.
 Robert: OK. 2 _____ (get) my swimming shorts, so I can swim in the lake, and I
 3 _____ (look) for a ball, so we can play football.
 Mum: Great.
 Robert: What food 4 _____ we _____ (take)?
 Mum: I've made some sandwiches and I've bought some crisps.
 Robert: Have you made a cake?
 Mum: No. I didn't have time, I'm afraid.
 Robert: 5 _____ (go) to the shop and buy some cakes?
 Mum: 6 _____ you _____ (get) some lemonade too? Here. I 7 _____ (give) you some money.
 Robert: Thanks. Oh, Mum, have you looked outside?
 Mum: Why?
 Robert: Look at those dark clouds. It 8 _____ (rain).
 Mum: Don't worry. The rain probably 9 _____ (not last) long. Are you going to the shop?
 Robert: Yes. I 10 _____ (buy) those cakes. Then I won't mind if it rains!

19 Work in a group of four. Imagine you are planning a celebration for the end of term. Decide what each person is going to do. Make offers, requests and suggestions using *will* and *shall*.

I'll make some salad.

That's a good idea. Shall I buy some lemonade?

OK. Will you get some biscuits too?

20 Now tell the class what you decided.

I'm going to make a salad.

Bella is going to buy some lemonade and biscuits.

21



Write sentences about your future using the words in the box. Remember to use *will* for guesses and *going to* for definite intentions.

go to university watch TV become a (teacher/engineer) get up early live in a different town learn to drive play sport use the internet tidy my room buy a car	I (don't) think probably at the weekend tomorrow next week when I'm older
--	---

Tomorrow I'm going to watch TV after school, and I'm going to tidy my room at the weekend. I'm not going to get up early at the weekend.

When I'm older I probably won't become a doctor, but maybe I'll become an engineer, because I like maths.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			

Reading and writing

- 1 Look at Toby's school timetable and read the sentences.
Write *yes* if the sentence is correct and *no* if the sentence is not correct.

	Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
08:30–09:30	maths	French	English	music	science
09:30–10:30	history	science	history	ICT	English
10:30–11:30	science	maths	science	French	history
11:30–12:30	French	lunch	ICT	maths	lunch
12:30–01:00	lunch	English	lunch	lunch	PE
01:00–02:00	English	history	music	English	maths
02:00–03:00	music	PE	maths	science	French

It's ten o'clock on Wednesday ...

- ▶ Toby isn't doing English. yes
- 1 He always has lunch at 12.30. ____
 - 2 He did PE yesterday. ____
 - 3 He's doing history now. ____
 - 4 He did PE two days ago. ____
 - 5 He isn't doing science now. ____
 - 6 At twelve o'clock yesterday, he was having lunch. ____
 - 7 He does maths every day. ____
 - 8 He doesn't study music. ____

- 2 Lucy is on holiday at the moment and she is writing a blog.
Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ I'm B with my cousins in Australia.
A stay **B** staying C stayed
- 1 I'm sitting by their swimming pool ____.
A every day B twice C right now
 - 2 My cousins ____ here for three years.
A live B are living C have lived
 - 3 The weather is warm, so people often ____ outside.
A eat B are eating C have eaten
 - 4 At the moment, my uncle ____ breakfast on the barbecue.
A makes B is making C has made
 - 5 We've ____ some amazing things.
A do B did C done
 - 6 I haven't seen a kangaroo ____.
A yet B just C already
 - 7 It's a very big country but not many people ____ here.
A live B are living C have lived
 - 8 Australia is great. ____ to go home!
A I don't want B I'm not wanting C I haven't wanted

3 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the conversations.

- ▶ I think it's going to rain. A
A No, it isn't.
B Yes, it goes.
C No, it doesn't.
- 1 I don't feel well. Can I go home? ____
A Yes. I phone your mum.
B Yes. I'll phone your mum.
C Yes. I'm going to phone your mum.
- 2 What did you do at the weekend? ____
A I was going to the cinema.
B I'm going to revise for the test.
C I went to London with my parents.

- 3 When are you going to tidy your room? ____
A Last week.
B Tomorrow.
C At the moment.
- 4 Is this film good? ____
A No. I don't enjoy it.
B Yes. I'll like it.
C Yes. I'm enjoying it.
- 5 Where were you at three o'clock? ____
A I was walking home.
B I played tennis with Vicky.
C I normally go to Sam's house.

4 Read the article about Paul Stevens. Are the sentences correct or incorrect? If the information is not given, choose *Doesn't say*. Circle the correct answer.



When he was 26, Paul Stevens was living a normal life. He'd left university at the age of 21 and had become an accountant. He'd lived in London for five years, and at the age of 24 he'd bought a new car.

But then one day he saw an advertisement which changed his life. A billionaire was looking for people to sail his yacht. Paul had learnt to sail when he was a boy, so he applied for the job and got it. At the age of 26, he left his job as an accountant and moved away from London.

Now 30 years old, Paul still lives and works on the yacht. He has sailed all around the world. Last year, he went to Australia and last week he was in the Caribbean.

- ▶ Paul left university nine years ago.
 A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 1 Paul has lived in London for five years.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 2 He'd been in London for three years when he bought a car.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 3 He was working as an accountant when he saw the job advertisement.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 4 Paul didn't know how to sail when he got the job.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 5 He hasn't got a car now.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 6 Paul has worked on the yacht for four years.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say
- 7 He has just been to Australia.
A Correct B Incorrect C Doesn't say

5 What does Kim say to Jane? Match a letter (A–H) to 1–5. You don't need to use all the letters.

Jane Hi, Kim. Where are you?
 Kim ▶ c
 Jane Why are you there?
 Kim 1 _____
 Jane OK, OK. But your dad normally collects you in the car.
 Kim 2 _____
 Jane So what time are you going to get home?
 Kim 3 _____
 Jane But you're going out with me at six tonight.
 Kim 4 _____
 Jane I've got an idea. I'll speak to my mum. We'll come and get you in the car.
 Kim 5 _____
 Jane See you soon.

- A Where are we going?
- B She hasn't arrived yet.
- C I'm standing at the bus stop.
- D Oh no. I'd forgotten about that.
- E I don't know. It will probably be about six o'clock.
- F Great! Thanks, Jane.
- G I'm waiting for a bus, of course.
- H He's just called me. His car has broken down.

6 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ She _____ for the bus when she fell over.
 (A) was running B was runing C runing
- 1 He didn't _____ very much in the exam.
 A write B wrote C written
- 2 Don't worry. I'm not going _____ at you.
 A shout B shouting C to shout
- 3 My parents _____ left work yet.
 A have B haven't C didn't
- 4 What time does your school _____?
 A finish B finishing C finishes
- 5 It was the first time he'd _____ a shark.
 A see B saw C seen
- 6 She _____ that book last year.
 A read B isn't reading C reads
- 7 I think it will _____ tomorrow.
 A snow B snows C to snow
- 8 Where's Milly? She's _____ answering her phone.
 A isn't B not C no

7 Read the information and complete the sentences with *Cathy* or *Jason*.

Cathy		
Tuesday	a.m.	go canoeing
	p.m.	visit a museum
Wednesday	a.m.	play tennis
	p.m.	climb a mountain
Thursday	a.m.	go swimming
	p.m.	cook a meal outside

Jason		
Tuesday	a.m.	climb a mountain
	p.m.	cook a meal outside
Wednesday	a.m.	go swimming
	p.m.	go canoeing
Thursday	a.m.	play tennis
	p.m.	visit a museum

It is Thursday morning.

▶ Jason went canoeing yesterday.

- 1 _____ has already visited a museum.
- 2 _____ is going to visit a museum today.
- 3 _____ isn't swimming at the moment.
- 4 While _____ was cooking a meal outside, _____ was visiting a museum.
- 5 _____ hasn't cooked a meal outside yet.
- 6 _____ climbed a mountain two days ago.
- 7 _____ had already been canoeing before _____ did it.

- 8 Read a news report about the arrival of two pandas at a British zoo. Choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

Two very important guests have A arrived at Edinburgh Zoo. Tian Tian and Yang Guang are giant pandas. They were born and grew up in China. Then, two days ago, they ¹___ into Britain. Now they ²___ in a special, luxury area of the zoo and are recovering from their long journey.

This is the first time that pandas ³___ in Britain since 1995, so millions of new visitors will probably come to the zoo to see them. In fact, thousands of people have ⁴___ bought tickets.

The pandas will be very expensive for the zoo. Firstly, the zoo ⁵___ to pay the Chinese government £6 million to keep the pandas for ten years. Secondly, it will have to spend a lot of money on food. Pandas ⁶___ bamboo and they normally eat for fourteen hours a day. So the zoo will probably ⁷___ £70,000 a year to buy enough bamboo!

- ▶ **A** just **B** never **C** yet
- 1 **A** have flown **B** had flown **C** flew
- 2 **A** stay **B** are staying **C** have stayed
- 3 **A** are **B** have been **C** were
- 4 **A** already **B** yesterday **C** yet
- 5 **A** going **B** will **C** is going
- 6 **A** love **B** are loving **C** will love
- 7 **A** paying **B** pay **C** to pay



- 9 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than two words.

▶ She practised very hard and then took her piano exam.
By the time she took her piano exam she'd practised very hard.

- 1 I've known him for ten years.
I met him ten years _____.
- 2 The accident happened while Kate was walking to school.
Kate was walking to school _____ the accident happened.
- 3 The train is going to arrive soon.
The train hasn't arrived _____.
- 4 I've decided to learn French.
I'm _____ learn French.
- 5 They moved to America in 2010 and they're still living there now.
They _____ in America since 2010.
- 6 Fred hadn't played golf before.
That was the first time Fred _____ golf.
- 7 I promise to tidy my room tomorrow.
_____ tidy my room tomorrow.

- 10 Complete the text. Write one word in each space.

I was born fifteen years ago in London.
¹_____ I was six, my family moved to Bristol and we've lived there ever since.
I'm a student at Bennet School. I've been there ²_____ five years and I think it's a very good school. At the moment I ³_____ studying for exams. I ⁴_____ already done four exams and I'm doing three more next week. It's hard work and I ⁵_____ be very happy when I've finished.
My favourite subject is French. ⁶_____ year I went to France and stayed with a French family. It was the first time I ⁷_____ been to France. It was difficult at first but in the end I really enjoyed it. This summer, I'm ⁸_____ going to France, unfortunately. I'm going on holiday with my family. We're going ⁹_____ drive to Scotland and walk in the mountains. I think it will ¹⁰_____ fun.

- 11 Write a short text about yourself. Answer these questions.

- When and where were you born? Where do you live now?
- Where do you go to school? What are you studying at the moment?
- What did you do last summer? What are your plans for next summer?

Listening

12 R2.1 Listen. Choose the correct picture A, B or C.



A



B



C



1 A



B



C



2 A



B



C



3 A



B



C



4 A



B



C



5 A



B



C

13 **R2.2** You will hear the start of a job interview. Is Jenny talking about the past, the present or the future? Choose the correct answer A, B or C.



- ▶ live in Australia
A Past B Now C Future
- 1 live in England
 A Past B Now C Future
- 2 finish school
 A Past B Now C Future
- 3 go to university
 A Past B Now C Future
- 4 work in a shop
 A Past B Now C Future
- 5 study computer science
 A Past B Now C Future
- 6 study physics, maths and chemistry
 A Past B Now C Future
- 7 work as a computer programmer
 A Past B Now C Future
- 8 tell people about computers
 A Past B Now C Future
- 9 work in a fast-food restaurant
 A Past B Now C Future
- 10 work at a children's camp
 A Past B Now C Future

14 **R2.3** Ryan is at a school camp and he's talking to his dad on the phone. Listen and tick (✓) the action which happened first in each pair.



- ▶ everyone getting up
 Ryan cooking breakfast
- 1 washing up
 making sandwiches
- 2 tidying the tents
 taking rubbish to the bin
- 3 swimming in the lake
 playing football
- 4 having dinner
 eating cake
- 5 frying chicken
 preparing salad
- 6 Tom waving
 football match starting

Speaking

15 Ask and answer these questions with your partner.

- Do you normally walk to school?
- What is your teacher wearing today?
- What were you doing at eight o'clock last night?
- Have you had lunch yet?
- Did you go on holiday last summer?
- Have you ever met a famous person?
- How long have you known your best friend?
- Are you going to study English next year?
- What will you do when you leave school?

16 Work in pairs. Imagine you are in a university interview. Take turns to be the interviewer and the student. Ask questions and complete the table. Student A: go to page 169. Student B: go to page 170.

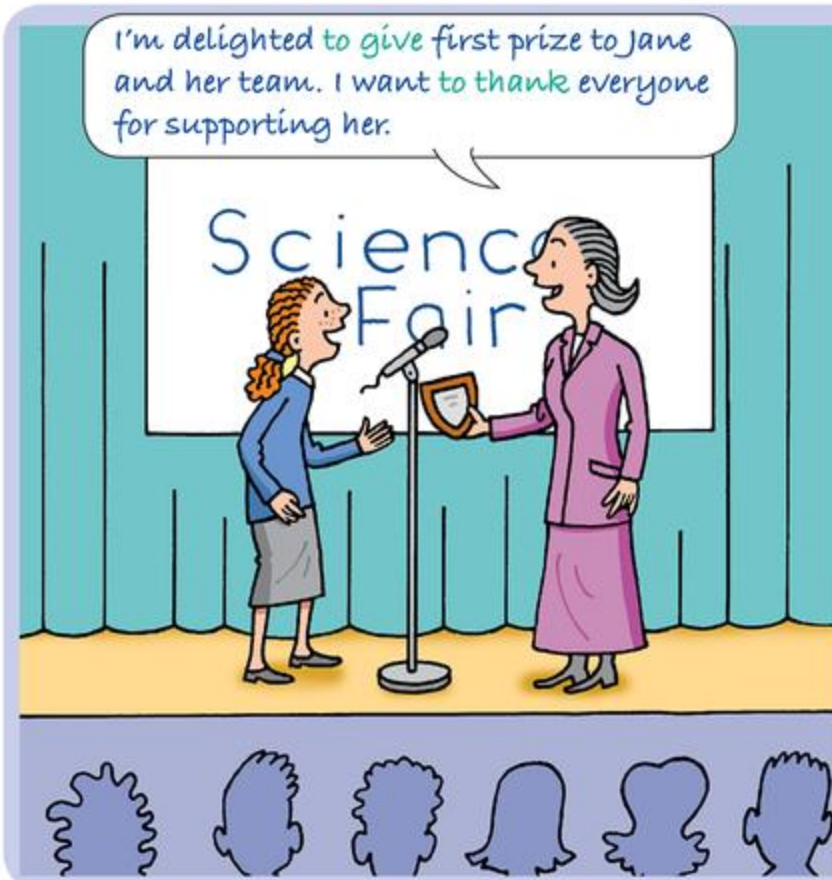
Name	
Country	
Subjects/study?	
Do/last summer?	
Plans for future?	



13 To + the infinitive and the -ing form

I can decide when to use *to* + the infinitive form or the *-ing* form.

To + the infinitive



We use **to** + the infinitive (or **base form**) when we talk about purpose.

I went to the shop to buy some bread.

She phoned Mary to invite her to the cinema.

We use **to** + the infinitive after some verbs (e.g. **agree, decide, hope, learn, want, would like**)

I agreed to meet her at seven o'clock.

We hope to win the match on Saturday.

But we don't use **to** + the infinitive with modal verbs (e.g. **must, should, will**).

You mustn't to be late.

He should to practise every day.

We can use **to** + the infinitive after **It + be + adjective**.

It's important to revise before an exam.

It was easy to find your house.

To talk about people's feelings we can use **be + adjective + to** + the infinitive.

I'm very happy to be here.

He was surprised to see the head teacher in his lesson.

* 1 Rewrite the sentences using **to** + the infinitive.

- ▶ I looked at the website. I found the information.

I looked at the website to find the information.

- Beth gets up early. She catches the bus.
Beth gets up early _____ the bus.
- We went to the library. We borrowed some books.
We went to the library _____ some books.
- He's going to wash cars. He's going to earn some money.
He's going to wash cars _____ some money.
- Julia did the washing-up. She helped her parents.
Julia did the washing-up _____ her parents.
- She's saving money. She's going to pay for a ticket to Miami.
She's saving money _____ for a ticket to Miami.
- Toby went to the shops. He bought some jeans.
Toby went to the shops _____ some jeans.

- I'm standing on a ladder. I'm going to paint the house.

I'm standing on a ladder _____ the house.

- Mandy sent a message to Cathy. She told her about the party.

Mandy sent a message to Cathy _____ her about the party.

* 2

Work in pairs. Ask questions with *Why...?* and the verbs below. Invent an answer using **to** + the infinitive.

get up early
go to the supermarket
join the sports club
look at the internet
phone your mum
sell your bike
speak to the teacher

Why did you get up early?

To finish my homework.

3 Write sentences using the words and phrases in the boxes and *to + the infinitive*. Give your own opinion.



bad boring difficult easy fun good
important interesting useful tiring

make a cake revise for exams
speak English watch comedy on TV
meet new people go abroad on holiday
use the internet a lot eat a lot of junk food
watch sport on TV take photos of your family
go on a long car journey

- ▶ *It's difficult to make a cake.*
- 1 _____
 - 2 _____
 - 3 _____
 - 4 _____
 - 5 _____
 - 6 _____
 - 7 _____
 - 8 _____
 - 9 _____
 - 10 _____

4 Match a-h to 1-7.

- ▶ I was pleased to g
- 1 Are you afraid _____
 - 2 They were interested _____
 - 3 We were shocked to _____
 - 4 I'm sorry _____
 - 5 I'm glad to _____
 - 6 Is she happy to _____
 - 7 She was amazed _____
- a to arrive so late.
b to hold the snake?
c to win the match.
d to discover what had happened.
e see you're feeling fine now.
f move to London?
g hear you had passed your exam.
h find out about your accident.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ We've *decided to move* to a different town. (decide/move)
▶ Frank *can't travel* by plane. He gets too nervous. (can't/travel)
- 1 You _____ to loud music on the bus. (mustn't/listen)
 - 2 When did you _____ the piano? (learn/play)
 - 3 I spoke to Paul yesterday and he _____ the bike. (promise/repair)
 - 4 Alice _____ a teacher. She likes children. (should/become)
 - 5 Fred and Richard have _____ with the competition. (agree/help)
 - 6 I think you _____ better next time. (will/do)
 - 7 We looked everywhere but we _____ her ring. (couldn't/find)
 - 8 Jane _____ an online business. (would like/start)

6 **13.1** Read the dialogue. Add the missing *to* before eight infinitive forms. Listen and check.



- Amy Hi, Suzy. How was Jenny's concert last night?
Suzy I didn't see it.
Amy But you agreed ^{to} go.
Suzy I know. I really wanted see it, but in the end I couldn't get there.
Amy What happened?
Suzy Well, I'd planned take the bus but then my dad offered drive me there. It was raining so I was happy accept his offer.
Amy So, what was the problem?
Suzy He couldn't start the car. So I went catch the bus, but there were no more buses.
Amy Have you spoken to Jenny?
Suzy Not yet. I'm too embarrassed.
Amy Well, you must speak to her.
Suzy But will she be angry?
Amy No, it'll be OK. You should phone her and promise go round and see her tonight.
Suzy That's a good idea.
Amy Yes. It's important keep your friends.

-ing form

We use the **-ing** form after some verbs (e.g. *like, love, don't mind, stop, keep, give up*).

*Do you **like shopping**?*

*She didn't **stop working** all day.*

We often use **go + the -ing** form for sports and other activities.

*I often **go swimming** at the weekend.*

*Leo **went shopping** yesterday.*

We use the **-ing** form after prepositions.

*I'm worried **about failing** the exam.*

*He found the answer **by going** online.*

We can use the **-ing** form as the subject of a sentence.

***Skiing** is exciting.*

***Using a dictionary** will improve your English.*

See page 173 for spelling rules of the **-ing** form.

*7 Complete the sentences with the **-ing** form of the verbs in the box.

cook run do lose meet revise win
sleep swim tidy wait practise drink

► We enjoyed meeting the head teacher.

- 1 I hate _____ for the bus.
- 2 Billy keeps _____ his keys.
- 3 Did you go _____ in the lake?
- 4 Have you finished _____ your room?
- 5 I don't mind _____ the washing-up.
- 6 I've given up _____ cola.
- 7 Rosy is still in bed. She loves _____!
- 8 I like eating but I can't stand _____.
- 9 I love _____ prizes.
- 10 My friend goes _____ every day.
- 11 You can improve by _____.
- 12 I'm _____ for my maths test.

*8

Look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions with **go + the -ing** form of the verb.

How often do you ...? Would you like to ...?
When did you last ...?

shop



fish



bowl



swim



camp



run



When did you last go bowling?

9 Rewrite the sentences using the *-ing* form.

- ▶ It's easy to cook fish.
Cooking fish is easy.
- It's good to swim.

 - It's difficult to drive a lorry.

 - It's important to laugh a lot.

 - It's interesting to study history.

 - It's healthy to eat fish.

 - It's hard to run a marathon.

 - It's wrong to tell lies.

 - It's fun to see your friends.

10 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- ▶ I don't want to listen to this song again.
I'm bored with *listening to this song*.
- Alice sings very well.
Alice is good at _____.
 - I'd like to buy that phone.
I'm interested in _____.
 - I can't type very fast.
I'm slow at _____.
 - She may arrive late. She's worried.
She's worried about _____.
 - This video can help you improve your English.
This video is useful for _____.
 - We may go to a concert on Saturday.
We're thinking of _____.
 - You've made the dinner. That's nice.
Thank you for _____.
 - I'm going to watch a good film tonight.
I'm looking forward to _____.

11 Tick (✓) the verbs that you can use with *go* + the *-ing* form.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------|-------|--------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| ▶ see | <input type="checkbox"/> | play | <input type="checkbox"/> | shop | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 wash | <input type="checkbox"/> | swim | <input type="checkbox"/> | cook | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 watch | <input type="checkbox"/> | eat | <input type="checkbox"/> | skate | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 fish | <input type="checkbox"/> | buy | <input type="checkbox"/> | read | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 draw | <input type="checkbox"/> | cycle | <input type="checkbox"/> | work | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 climb | <input type="checkbox"/> | phone | <input type="checkbox"/> | study | <input type="checkbox"/> |

12 **13.2** Listen and complete the table with the correct symbol.

☹️ = hate 😐 = don't mind 😊 = enjoy

	Paul	Lucy
wait in queues	☹️	
find money in your pocket		
do sport in the rain		
sit next to someone talking on their phone		
watch adverts on TV		

13 **GAME** Logic test. Look at the table and read the sentences. Write the names in the correct place in the table.

Names	_____	_____	_____	_____
buy clothes	☹️	😊	☹️	😊
listen to music	😊	😊	😊	😊
go for a walk	☹️	😊	😊	☹️
wake up early	☹️	😊	😊	☹️
visit the dentist	😊	😊	😊	☹️

- Charlie loves buying clothes.
- Bella doesn't mind visiting the dentist.
- Tim doesn't like going for a walk.
- Vicky doesn't mind listening to music.
- Charlie enjoys listening to music.
- Bella can't stand going for a walk.
- Tim hates waking up early.
- Vicky doesn't like buying clothes.
- Charlie doesn't mind visiting the dentist.
- Bella can't stand waking up early.

14 Ask and answer questions about the activities in exercise 12 and in the table in exercise 13.

can't stand don't mind enjoy hate love

Do you like waiting in queues?

No, I can't stand waiting in queues.

Verb + to + the infinitive or -ing

We use some verbs with **to** + the infinitive.
*agree decide hope learn offer plan promise
 refuse want try would like*

We use some verbs with the **-ing** form.
*can't stand dislike don't mind enjoy finish
 give up go hate keep like love practise stop*

Remember there is a difference between **like** and **would like**.

I like playing tennis. (= I enjoy tennis.)

I'd like to play tennis. (= I want to play tennis.)

After some verbs, we can use both forms with no change of meaning e.g. **begin, prefer, continue, start.**

I started to repair my bike.

I started repairing my bike.

*15 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ We offered to pay / paying for them.
- 1 Everyone enjoys **to win** / winning.
- 2 She's decided **to buy** / buying a car.
- 3 Would you like **to have** / having lunch?
- 4 I don't mind **to wait** / waiting.
- 5 Why does Pat keep **to ask** / asking the same question?
- 6 When did she learn **to swim** / swimming?
- 7 Stop **to talk** / talking!
- 8 He promised **to tidy** / tidying up.

*16 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- ▶ Do you want to play tennis? (play)
- ▶ He hasn't finished tidying his room. (tidy)
- 1 I can't stand _____ up early. (get)
- 2 She hopes _____ her exams. (pass)
- 3 Would you like _____ at the computer? (look)
- 4 Have you practised _____ the ball? (catch)
- 5 He refused _____ on Saturdays. (work)
- 6 Why do you keep _____ the same mistake? (make)
- 7 We went _____ at the lake yesterday. (fish)
- 8 We're planning _____ at six. (arrive)

*17 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- ▶ Stealing is a crime. (steal)
- 1 It's important _____ your work. (check)
- 2 I was surprised _____ the match. (win)
- 3 Thank you for _____ your room. (clean)
- 4 _____ round the world would be fun. (travel)
- 5 I'm pleased _____ you. (meet)
- 6 Are you interested in _____ the planet? (save)
- 7 It wasn't difficult _____ the answer. (find)
- 8 He earned a lot of money by _____ hard. (work)

*18 GAME Work in small groups. Take turns to make sentences using one verb from each box. The other team members give one point if the sentence is correct.

agree be good at
 decide don't mind
 keep learn stop
 think about try

buy clean do go
 meet play revise
 swim talk watch

I agreed to clean my room.

I learnt to play the trumpet.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			

14 Reported speech

I can report direct speech with the correct time and place references.

Reported speech



Tense changes

When we talk about what people said in the past, we use a reporting verb like **say** or **tell**. We usually change the tense of the reporting verb so that when the verb is in the present simple tense, for example, we report it using the past simple tense. We use quotation marks (') in direct speech but not in reported speech.

Sue: 'I **play** tennis every day.' (direct speech)
 Sue **said** that she **played** tennis every day. (reported speech)
 Anna: 'I've **been** to Scotland.' (present perfect)
 Anna **said** that she **had been** to Scotland. (past perfect)

Direct speech tense	Reported speech tense
Present simple	Past simple
Present continuous	Past continuous
Past simple/Present perfect	Past perfect
<i>will</i>	<i>would</i>
<i>am/is/are going to</i>	<i>was/were going to</i>
<i>can</i>	<i>could</i>

We can use **that** before the second verb, but it isn't necessary.

Tanya: 'I'm doing my homework.'
 Tanya **said** (**that**) she **was** doing her homework.

If what someone says is still true when we report it, then we can choose to change the tense or not.
 'I like vegetables.' → You said you **like** vegetables.

Pronoun changes

We usually need to change pronouns (**I**, **we**) and the verb form when we report speech.

Molly says, 'I enjoy maths.' → Molly says **she** enjoys maths.
 Jason thinks: 'Amy doesn't like **me**.' → Jason thought Amy **didn't** like **him**.

Say or tell?

We use **tell** (someone something) if we want to include the person or indirect object.

Anna **told** Sue she was going to the dentist.
 She **tells** me she's happy.
 She **says** she's happy.

* 1 Look at the pictures and circle the correct verb form.

I'm rich.



▶ She said **she was** / I was rich.

It's going to rain.



1 He said **it was** / he was going to rain.

We don't watch TV.



2 They said **we didn't** / they didn't watch TV.

I like spiders.



3 He said **he liked** / I liked spiders.

****2 Write the verbs in reported speech.**

- ▶ **Ben and Pat:** 'We work very hard.'
They said they worked very hard.
- 1 **Jan:** 'This is the right train.'
Jan said that this _____ the right train.
- 2 **Ann and Jess:** 'We're tired at the moment.'
Ann and Jess said that _____ tired at the moment.
- 3 **Tim to his dad:** 'I fell asleep in class.'
Tim told his dad that _____ asleep in class.
- 4 **David:** 'I've seen this film.'
David said _____ this film.
- 5 **My brother to Bill:** 'Our family isn't rich.'
My brother told Bill that _____ rich.
- 6 **You:** 'I'm going to enjoy the concert.'
You said _____ enjoy the concert.

****3 14.1 Some information in the table is not correct. Listen and write ✓ or ✗. Then listen again and report the sentences with the correct information.**

	Mandy	Oscar and Sam
Age	15	17
Town	Bristol ✗	Liverpool
Favourite activity	reading	football
Best experience	trip to Egypt	football competition
Ambition	journalist	footballers

- ▶ Mandy said she lived in Manchester.
- 1 Mandy said _____.
- 2 Mandy said _____.
- 3 Oscar and Sam said _____.
- 4 Oscar and Sam said _____.
- 5 Oscar and Sam said they _____ become _____.

****4 Say or tell? Circle the correct verb.**



- ▶ **Tell / Say** me your name.
- 1 She **tells / says** she isn't coming.
- 2 They **tell / say** me that you're unhappy.
- 3 **Tell / say** him that I'll phone later.
- 4 He doesn't **tell / say** much.
- 5 Don't **tell / say** me the answer.
- 6 Max **told / said** you didn't like him.

****5 GAME Write two sentences that are true and one that is not true. Then play in groups of three pairs. Report your partner's sentences to the group. Can they guess which sentences are true?**

*I play the piano for an hour every day.
I don't like chocolate.
My brother works in a bike shop.*

Henry said he played the piano for an hour every day.

That's not true!

Yes, you're right!

***6 Circle the correct verb form.**

- ▶ 'I know the answer.'
She said she **knows / knew** the answer.
- 1 'I live in Manchester.'
He said he **lives / lived** in Manchester.
- 2 'The film starts at 3 p.m.'
He told me the film **starts / started** at 3 p.m.
- 3 'We're hungry.'
They said **they're / they were** hungry.
- 4 'I don't understand it.'
She said she **doesn't / didn't** understand it.
- 5 'We aren't coming.'
They said **they aren't / weren't** coming.
- 6 'I can't find my keys.'
He said he **can't / couldn't** find his keys.
- 7 'We're having lunch.'
I told you **we're / we were** having lunch.
- 8 'They don't like me.'
She thought they **don't / didn't** like her.

Time and place references

In reported speech, we also have to change words like **here**, **now** and **this**.

here – there	today – that day
now – at the time	tonight – that night
this – that	tomorrow – the next/following day
these – those	next week – the next/following week
yesterday – the previous day, the day before	last week – the week before, the previous week

'We live **here**.' → They said they lived **there**.
 'I love **this** film.' → He said he loved **that** film.

7 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

at the time at the time the next day that
 that day that night there those

- ▶ 'I'm having dinner now.'
He said he was having dinner at the time.
- 1 'This hotel is very nice.'
He thought _____ hotel was very nice.
- 2 'Today is my birthday.'
He said _____ was his birthday.
- 3 'There isn't anyone here.'
He said that there wasn't anyone _____.
- 4 'I can't go out tonight.'
He said he couldn't go out _____.
- 5 'I'm seeing Jack tomorrow.'
He said he was seeing Jack _____.
- 6 'The classroom is empty now.'
He said that the classroom was empty _____.
- 7 'These grapes taste delicious.'
He said that _____ grapes tasted delicious.



8 Complete the reported speech.

- ▶ **Cathy:** 'I'm sorry.'
She said she was sorry.
- 1 **Mike:** 'The homework is difficult.'
He said _____ difficult.
- 2 **Sue and Kim:** 'We like the photos.'
They said _____ the photos.
- 3 **Ed:** 'I know Mr Thomas.'
Ed told me _____ Mr Thomas.
- 4 **Vicky:** 'I'm not surprised.'
She said _____ surprised.
- 5 **Bill and Ryan:** 'We don't want anything to eat.'
They said _____ anything to eat.
- 6 **Tom:** 'I come from Ireland.'
He told them _____ from Ireland.
- 7 **Jenny:** 'I can repair it.'
Jenny said _____ repair it.
- 8 **Jane and Ivy:** 'Linda hates us.'
Jane and Ivy thought _____ them.
- 9 **Jill and Kim:** 'We're very lucky.'
They knew that _____ very lucky.
- 10 **Leo:** 'I don't have a mobile phone.'
He told me _____ a mobile phone.

9 **14.2** Listen and match 1–6 with the reported speech a–f.



- a They said they were American. ____
- b He said he was American. ____
- c They said she was American. 1
- d He said they were American. ____
- e They said he was American. ____
- f He said I was American. ____

10 What did they say? Write the direct speech.

- ▶ Mary said she was tired.
'I'm tired.'
- 1 Toby said he preferred coffee.

- 2 Kim and Jane didn't think they were very pretty.

- 3 Alex said his mother came from India.

- 4 Emily said she was feeling sick.

- 5 Gemma said she couldn't understand that book.

- 6 Jill and Sue said it didn't belong to me.

- 7 Tim thought his brother was already there.

- 8 Vicky said her parents were arriving the next day.

11 **GAME** Work in groups of four. Student A: whisper a sentence to student B. Student B: whisper what A said to student C. Student C: whisper what A said to student D. Student D: tell student A what he said. Is it right?

I'm meeting Ted at the cinema.

A John said he was meeting Fred at the cinema.

B John said he was eating bread at the cinema.

C You said you were eating bread at the swimming pool.

D No, that's wrong! I said I was meeting Ted at the cinema!

A

12 Complete the reported speech.

- ▶ 'My uncle isn't here now.'
She said her uncle wasn't there at the time.
- 1 'Our parents don't understand us.'
They said _____
- 2 'I'm not enjoying this book.'
He said _____
- 3 'It is cold here today.'
They said _____
- 4 'I can't find my wallet.'
He said _____
- 5 'These shoes don't fit me.'
She said _____
- 6 'My friends are waiting for me.'
She said _____
- 7 'I'm sorry, but there aren't any chips tonight.'
He said _____
- 8 'I'm starting a new job next week.'
She said _____

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊 😊😊 😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			

Reading and writing

1 Read the sentences about reading. Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

▶ B is important but it's also fun.

A To read **B** Reading C Read

1 It is easy ___ information on the internet.

A to find B finding C find

2 You can ___ books from libraries.

A to borrow B borrowing C borrow

3 My teacher ___ that she downloads books onto her computer.

A says B tells C wants

4 I enjoy ___ science-fiction novels.

A to read B reading C read

5 My dad said that he ___ science fiction when he was young.

A love B loves C loved

6 I'd like ___ a novel one day.

A to write B writing C write

2 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

▶ I'm worried. I have to sing in the concert.
I'm worried about singing in the concert.

1 Gemma said, 'I don't like this song.'
Gemma said that _____.

2 It's impossible to play tennis in the rain.
You can't _____.

3 I love buying new clothes.
_____ is fun.

4 William and Henry thought, 'No one can find us here.'
William and Henry thought that _____.

5 Katie has made a decision. She's going to study biology.
Katie has decided _____.

6 Amy said she came from Australia.
Amy said, '_____.'

3 Read the text below and choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

Andrew Rugasira is a Ugandan businessman. Ten years ago, he decided ▶ B a new business. At that time, Ugandan coffee farmers made money by ¹___ coffee beans to Western companies, who then made coffee and sold it to supermarkets.

Andrew thought ²___ was wrong. He believed that his farmers ³___ earn enough money. He stopped ⁴___ beans to Western companies and started making coffee himself. At first, it was very difficult ⁵___ British and American supermarkets to buy his coffee. But after ten years, he has finally succeeded.

Andrew ⁶___ me that Africans needed more confidence in their business ideas. 'We should ⁷___ in ourselves. It took me six years, but I kept ⁸___ hard and refused to give up. ⁹___ this business has been good for me, but it's also good for the farmers.'

▶ A start **B** to start C starting

1 A sell B to sell C selling

2 A that B this C he

3 A aren't B don't C didn't

4 A sell B to sell C selling

5 A persuade B to persuade C to persuading

6 A said B told C says

7 A believe B to believe C believing

8 A work B to work C working

9 A Create B To create C Creating

4 Some of the bold words are incorrect. Write the correct words or tick ✓ if the words are correct.

▶ I don't mind **to wait** for you. waiting

▶ They said they **didn't understand** the film.

_____ ✓

1 **To sleep** in a tent is fun. _____

2 She said she couldn't go out **this night**. _____

3 Martin says he'd like **to swim** with dolphins. _____

4 I **told him** I didn't like it. _____

5 He promised **finishing** his homework the next day. _____

6 We **told to them** the shop was closed. _____

5 Read the email from John. Write a reply to his questions.

Hi Max


Thanks for your email. It was interesting to see the pictures of your family.

What do you like doing at the weekend? I think playing computer games is boring, but I love playing football, and I also like reading books about science. I'd love to study science at university.

Do you like sport? What would you like to do when you are older?


John

Listening

6  **R3.1** Listen and choose the correct answer A, B or C to complete each sentence.

- ▶ A go **B** to go C going
- 1 A come B to come C coming
- 2 A she liked it B I like it C she liked me
- 3 A break down B to break down C breaking down
- 4 A get up earlier B to get up earlier C getting up earlier
- 5 A me she was tired B she was tired C that was tired
- 6 A hear it again B to hear it again C hearing it again




7  **R3.2** Listen to the conversations (1–6) and match them to the sentences (a–f).

- a They said they didn't want to play football. ____
- b They said they enjoyed playing football. ____
- c They decided to play football. ____
- d She said she didn't enjoy playing tennis. 1
- e She said she'd like to play tennis. ____
- f She said she couldn't play tennis. ____



Speaking

8  Work in pairs. Student A: look at the table and choose a person. Don't say who it is. Answer your partner's questions. Student B: ask questions and complete the first row of the table. Can you guess who it is?

like enjoy would like want

	Likes/Dislikes				Ambitions	
	cook	tidy room	play computer games	sing	learn the guitar	be a police officer
1						
2						
3						
4						
Ann	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓
Ed	x	✓	✓	x	x	✓
Dora	x	✓	x	✓	✓	x
Tony	✓	x	✓	x	✓	x

Do you like cooking?

Yes, I do.

Would you like to be a police officer?

Yes, I would.

Are you Ann?

Yes, I am!

15 Can, could, be able to

I can use *can*, *could* and *be able to* for ability, permission and requests.

Ability



We use **can** to talk about ability.

I can play the piano.

Ed can't answer the question.

Can Julia sing well? Yes, she can.

The past form is **could/couldn't**.

My dad could run fast when he was young.

I couldn't speak English ten years ago.

Can doesn't have an infinitive form. So we use **be able to** with auxiliary and modal verbs (e.g. *have*, *will*, *must*).

You must be able to swim.

You must can swim.

Computers will be able to talk to us in the future.

We haven't been able to contact your parents.

When we are talking about the past, we sometimes use **was able to** instead of **could**.

We use **could/couldn't** to talk about a general ability in the past.

When I was young, I could swim 1,500 metres.

BUT

We use **was able to** when we talk about one particular action in the past. Note that in the negative, we can still use **couldn't**.

He fell off the boat but he was able to swim to the beach.
He couldn't get the bus home because he didn't have any money.

OR

He wasn't able to get the bus home.

- * 1 Jenny is 25. What can Jenny do now? What could she do when she was 14? Look at the chart and complete the sentences with *can*, *can't*, *could* or *couldn't*.

	Age 14	Now
drive a car	x	✓
cook	x	✓
run 1500m	✓	x
use a computer	x	✓
do maths problems	✓	x

- 'Could you do maths problems when you were younger?' 'Yes, I could.'

1 I _____ use a computer when I was 14.

2 '_____ you cook now?' 'Yes, I _____.'

3 I _____ run 1500 metres when I was younger.


4 I _____ drive a car now.

5 '_____ you do maths problems now?'
'No, I _____.'


6 But I _____ use a computer now.

7 I _____ run 1500 metres now.

8 I _____ drive a car when I was 14.

2  **15.1** Look again at the sentences in exercise 1. Listen and circle the strong forms. Then match a–d to rules 1 and 2.

- 1 We usually use the weak form of *can* and *could* ___ and ___.
 - 2 We use the strong form of *can* and *could* ___ ___.
- a in statements
 - b in questions
 - c in short answers
 - d when we want to emphasise the word

3  **15.2** Listen to Tony talking about being young. Do the pictures match what he says? Write ✓ or ✗.



✗



3



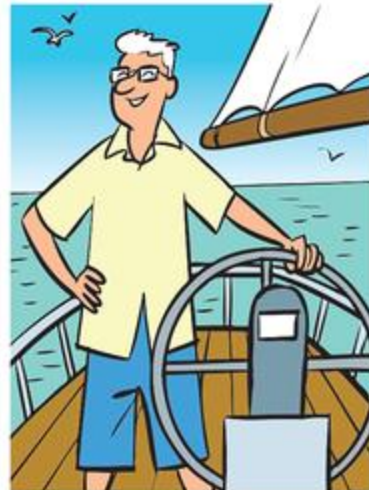
1




4



2




5

4  Write sentences about yourself and your family using *can/can't* and *could/couldn't*. Use the verbs in the box and in exercise 1.

catch a ball fly a kite play tennis ride a bike
sing well speak English

*I can fly a kite, but I can't play tennis.
My brother can't catch a ball.
My parents couldn't speak English when they were young.*


5  Work in pairs. Compare your sentences from exercise 4.

I can fly a kite.

I can, too. Can you ride a bike?

Yes, I can. I could ride a bike when I was six.

Could you? I couldn't ride a bike when I was six, but I can now!

6 Complete the sentences using *can* or *be able to* and the verbs in brackets. 

- ▶ Claire can play the piano very well. (play)
- ▶ I'd like to windsurf. Of course, you must be able to swim. (swim)

- 1 This homework isn't difficult. You should _____ it. (do)
- 2 My dad's a mechanic. He _____ cars, bikes and scooters. (repair)
- 3 '_____ you _____?' 'No. Not very well.' (draw)
- 4 Turn the music down. Everyone will _____ it. (hear)
- 5 Who _____ a tent? (put up)
- 6 I'd like to _____. (ski)
- 7 He won't _____. He doesn't like planes. (fly)
- 8 Emma _____ German and Spanish. She's good at languages. (speak)

7 Is *could* correct in these sentences? Write ✓ or *was/were able to*.

- ▶ I lost my wallet in the cinema. But after half an hour I **could** find it. was able to
- ▶ He **could** play the piano very well when he was younger. ✓
- 1 The car broke down but Carla's dad **could** repair it. _____
- 2 Ted forgot his pen but he **could** borrow one from Robert. _____
- 3 We liked the hotel because all the staff **could** speak English. _____
- 4 At first they said no, but in the end I **could** persuade them. _____
- 5 There was a problem with the computer, so I **couldn't** send the email. _____
- 6 Picasso was a great artist. He **could** paint anything. _____
- 7 I missed the bus, but I **could** get to work on time because I took a taxi. _____
- 8 It started raining but they **could** get to the top of mountain. _____

Permission and requests

We use **can I/we ...?** or **could I/we ...?** to ask for permission. **Could** is more polite, so we use it when talking to adults or strangers.

Can we watch that film tonight?

Could I finish my homework tomorrow?

We use **you can/can't** to give or refuse permission.

We don't use **could/couldn't**.

You can borrow my phone.

You can't ride your bike on the pavement.

Could I leave the lesson early?

No, you couldn't. No, you can't.

We use **can you ... ?/could you ... ?** to ask someone to do something. **Could** is more polite and formal.

Can you wait for me?

Could you open the window, please?

8 **15.3** Look at the pictures and write requests. Remember to use **can** for informal requests and **could** for formal or more polite requests. Listen and check.



carry/bags check/homework do/washing-up
open/door post/letters tidy/room

- ▶ Could you check my homework, please?
- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____



9 Read the situation and write a formal or informal request.

buy help lend open pass ~~pay~~ turn off

- ▶ You're getting on a bus with a friend, but you haven't got your wallet.
Could you pay for me?
- 1 Your brother is listening to very loud music. You don't like it.

- 2 You can't find your pen. Your friend has two pens.

- 3 You're in a classroom and it's very hot. Your teacher is near the window.

- 4 You're having dinner. The salt is next to your dad.

- 5 You don't understand your homework. Your friend is good at maths.

- 6 Your mother is going to the shops. There isn't any bread in the kitchen.

10 Look at the signs on a train. Write what you can and can't do.



- ▶ You can't talk on a mobile phone.
- 1 _____ listen to loud music.
 2 _____ smoke.
 3 _____ send text messages.
 4 _____ eat food.
 5 _____ bring a dog.
 6 _____ use a computer.
 7 _____ put luggage on the seat.

11 15.4 Ben and Katy's parents are going out for the day. Listen to the dialogue and write ✓ or ✗ in the table.

Katy		Ben	
invite three friends	✗	meet Tom	
invite one friend		cycle into town	
rent a film		take the bus	
get a pizza		get money from parents	

12 What can you do in your house? Complete the rules with ✓ or ✗, then write sentences.

eat food in my bedroom
 get up late at the weekend
 go to the shopping centre on my own
 look at my phone during dinner
 wear shoes in the house
 listen to loud music ✗
 play computer games before school
 watch TV in my bedroom ✓
 invite friends

I can watch TV in my bedroom.
I can't listen to loud music.

13 GAME

Work in groups of three. Student A asks for permission to do something. Student B says no, and has ten seconds to give a reason. Student C listens and gives one point if it is a good reason. Change roles.

buy some new trainers	have some chocolate
borrow your phone	play computer games
climb that tree	stay at my friend's house tonight
go to the park	watch TV
go to bed late	

Can I watch TV?

No, you can't. You haven't done the washing-up yet.

14 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Can I / you watch TV? I'm bored.
- 1 You **can't** / **couldn't** smoke in here.
- 2 He **can't** / **couldn't** ski when he was young.
- 3 Could I / you carry this? I'm tired.
- 4 It's OK. You **can** / **could** use your phone.
- 5 Sorry. I won't **can** / **be able to** come.
- 6 Would I / you close the door, please?
- 7 Can I / you wear your coat? I'm cold.
- 8 It was a very long book but I **could** / **was able to** finish it.

15 Complete the sentences with one word, using forms of *can*, *could* and *be able to*.

- ▶ 'What instruments can your brother play?'
'The piano and the guitar.'
- 1 'Would you like to go on the skiing trip?'
'Yes, but I _____ ski!'
- 2 My grandfather was an excellent athlete. He _____ run 1,500 metres in four minutes.
- 3 'Did you like that song?' 'Well, I liked the music but I _____ understand the words.'
- 4 'Could I buy these shoes?' 'No, you _____. They're too expensive.'
- 5 'Could you repair my bike?' 'Not now, but I may _____ do it tomorrow.'
- 6 He _____ open the door. He'd taken the wrong key!
- 7 'Excuse me. _____ you help me, please?'

- 8 I've never _____ remember dates or phone numbers.
- 9 '_____ you lend me a pen?' 'Yes, of course. Here you are.'
- 10 Although it was very dark we _____ find our way home.

16 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.



- ▶ The bus was full. I couldn't find a seat.
A could B couldn't C can't
- 1 I'm sorry you're not well, Mrs Jones. _____ come and visit you tomorrow?
A Can I B Am I able to C Could I
- 2 She _____ help with the problem because she speaks French.
A was able to B couldn't C could
- 3 It got dark very early. We _____ see where to go.
A could B couldn't C were able to
- 4 The car _____ stop before there was an accident.
A couldn't B could C was able to
- 5 _____ you help me with my homework, mum?
A Could B Can't C Can
- 6 Great! I _____ get the last ticket for the concert.
A can't B could C was able to
- 7 I _____ watch that programme last night because I had to go out.
A could B couldn't C was able to

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊😊😊😊😊😊😊😊

1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				
16				

16 Must, have to, should, needn't

I can use *must*, *have to*, *needn't* and *should* for obligation, necessity and advice.

Must, have to



When we talk about necessity or obligation, we use **must** and **have to**.

*You **must** answer all the questions.*

*We **have to** leave in five minutes.*

In questions, we normally use **have to**, not **must**.

*'Do I **have to** wear a tie?' 'Yes, you do.'*

*Does he **have to** study French?*

There is no past or future form of **must**. We use **had to** and **will have to**.

*I **had to** go to the dentist's yesterday.*

*I **musted** go to the dentist's.*

*I think you'll **have to** work harder in future.*

In the affirmative and in questions, we use **must** and **have to** in a similar way.

We generally use **have to** if there is an 'external' reason or if someone else tells us to do something.
*You **have to** read this book because it is on the exam syllabus.*


If the speaker or writer thinks something is important, but there isn't an external reason, we generally use **must**.

*You **must** read this book. It's not on the exam syllabus but it's very interesting. (The speaker thinks it is important.)*

We use **must** in written rules (because the writer thinks it is important).


*You **must** wear the correct kit for all sports lessons.*

The negatives (**mustn't** and **don't have to**) have different meanings. See page 91.

*** 1**  **16.1** Listen to the teacher talking to John's dad. Write the teacher's instructions.

▶ *He **must** arrive on time.*

- 1 _____ all his books and pens.
- 2 _____ the teacher.
- 3 _____ talking to his friends.
- 4 _____ his mobile phone.
- 5 _____ more homework.
- 6 _____ for tests.

*** 2**  Imagine you are John. Write sentences using **have to**.

▶ *I **have to** arrive on time.*

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____

*** 3** Complete the questions or sentences with one word. 

▶ Do I have to go to bed now?

- 1 You _____ use a pen not a pencil.
- 2 _____ I have to read this book? It's boring.
- 3 You _____ finish your homework before you watch TV.
- 4 My dad _____ to work on Saturdays.
- 5 She _____ to get up early yesterday.
- 6 You _____ study harder, so you can get into university.
- 7 _____ we _____ to walk to school? It's raining.
- 8 'I can't drive Max to school tomorrow.'
'He'll _____ to take the bus.'
- 9 Passengers for London _____ change trains at Oxford.
- 10 _____ you have to study English when you were young?

4

Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and ask and answer. Use the ideas in the box.

clean the bathroom
do the washing-up
lay the table
tidy your room

cook a meal
iron your clothes
make your bed
wash the car



Do you have to clean the bathroom?

No, I don't, but I have to clean the kitchen.

5 Decide if these rules are true or not true in your school. Make corrections if necessary.

- ▶ We have to wear school uniform.
Not true. We don't have to wear school uniform.
- 1 We have to be in school before 8 a.m.

- 2 We have to eat our lunch outside.

- 3 We have to tidy the classroom at the end of the day.

- 4 We don't have to use the teachers' surnames when we talk to them.

- 5 We have to do sport every day.

6 We have to do homework every evening.

7 We have to do tests every day.

6 Read the dialogue and circle the correct options.

- Paul: I've got a letter about the football trip.
Dad: What does it say?
Paul: It says, 'You **must** / **have to** arrive at school at 8.30 a.m.'
Dad: OK. And what time do you get back?
Paul: It says, 'Parents **must** / **have to** collect children at 7.30 p.m.'
Dad: OK. So you **must** / **have to** arrive at 8.30 and we **must** / **have to** collect you at 7.30. That's all fine.
Paul: Then it says, 'You **must** / **have to** wear school uniform.'
Dad: Fine. Do you **must** / **have to** take your PE kit?
Paul: Well, it says, 'The school will provide football kit. You **must** / **have to** bring football boots and a tracksuit to keep warm.'
Dad: OK. So you **must** / **have to** travel in your school uniform and you **must** / **have to** take a tracksuit and football boots. Anything else?
Paul: Actually, there's one more thing. It says, 'You **must** / **have to** bring £20 for the cost of transport.'
Dad: It says 'you' not 'your parents'. That means you **must** / **have to** start saving some money, Paul!

7 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ You **must** / **have to** listen carefully. I won't say this again.
- 1 We **must** / **have to** work hard this weekend because we've got exams next week.
- 2 Kate **must** / **has to** practise the piano more often. Her teacher spoke to her yesterday.
- 3 I've marked your homework. It's not very good. You'll **must** / **have to** do it again.
- 4 I **must** / **have to** go. I don't want to miss the start of the film.
- 5 You **must** / **have to** find your phone. I can't buy you a new one.
- 6 Ben **must** / **has to** stay late at school. His teacher has given him extra work.
- 7 I **must** / **have to** stay at home tomorrow. My dad wants me to help him with a job.
- 8 Your shoes look terrible. You **must** / **have to** buy some new ones.

Mustn't, don't have to, needn't

Mustn't and **don't have to** have different meanings.

We use **mustn't**, especially in rules, to say something is not permitted.

You **mustn't** walk on the grass. (= Don't walk on the grass.)

You **mustn't** go in there. It's dangerous.

I **mustn't** eat that chocolate. I'm going to have dinner in a minute.

We use **don't have to** to say something is not obligatory.

We **don't have to** walk. We can go in the car.

We **don't have to** go to the cinema. We can stay at my house and watch a DVD.

We can use **needn't** in the same way as **don't have to**.

We **don't have to** walk. = We **needn't** walk.

We **don't have to** go to the cinema. = We **needn't** go to the cinema.

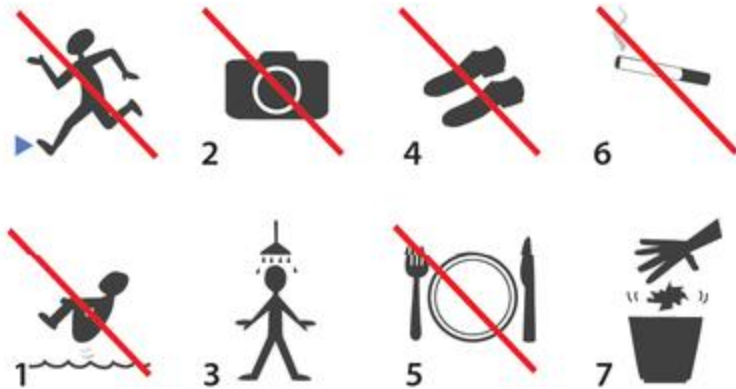
Note: the negative form **needn't** is a modal verb and is followed by the infinitive (without **to**). The affirmative and question forms of **need** are followed by **to** + the infinitive.

You **needn't** wait.

Do I **need to** wait?

You **need to** wait.

*** 8** Look at the signs at a swimming pool. Write rules with *must* or *mustn't* and the words in the box.



eat food have a shower jump run
take photos smoke use rubbish bins
wear shoes

- ▶ You mustn't run.
- 1 _____
 - 2 _____
 - 3 _____
 - 4 _____
 - 5 _____
 - 6 _____
 - 7 _____

**** 9** Look at the information about a job. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have to*.

Looking for a summer job?

Work on our summer camp in South America.



Essential	Not essential
speaking English	speaking Spanish
being enthusiastic	having a degree
liking children	having previous experience
being over 18	being able to drive
enjoying outdoor activities	playing sport
working for at least four weeks	staying all summer

- ▶ You don't have to speak Spanish.
- 1 You _____ speak English.
 - 2 You _____ play sport.
 - 3 You _____ enjoy outdoor activities.
 - 4 You _____ have a degree.
 - 5 You _____ be enthusiastic.
 - 6 You _____ like children.
 - 7 You _____ have previous experience.
 - 8 You _____ stay all summer.
 - 9 You _____ work for at least four weeks.
 - 10 You _____ be able to drive.

10 **16.2** A group of tourists is going to go on a safari. Listen and complete the information with **x**, **✓** or **-**.



- x** = Don't!
- ✓** = Necessary
- = Not necessary

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------|
| 1 bring a camera | _____ |
| 2 bring food and water | _____ |
| 3 feed the animals | _____ |
| 4 get up early | _____ |
| 5 leave the vehicle | <u> x </u> |
| 6 listen to the guide | _____ |
| 7 smoke | _____ |
| 8 talk quietly | _____ |
| 9 wear sun cream | _____ |

11 Complete the sentences with **mustn't**, **don't have to** or **doesn't have to**.



- ▶ You mustn't smoke in a cinema.
- 1 You _____ wait for me. You can go home now.
- 2 You _____ argue with the referee. His decision is final.
- 3 We _____ bring a football. We can use Martin's.
- 4 Tom _____ study hard. He already knows all the answers.
- 5 Jess _____ wear those shoes at school. They're the wrong colour.
- 6 You _____ listen to loud music. It's bad for your ears.
- 7 You _____ forget your keys. I won't be here when you get home.
- 8 You _____ ask the teacher. I can explain it to you.
- 9 I _____ get up early tomorrow. It's the holidays!
- 10 I _____ spend time on the internet tonight. I've got a lot of homework.

12



Write sentences about life at your school. Use **have to**, **mustn't** and **don't have to**. Use the words in the box and your own ideas.

do a lot of homework
eat in class
play a lot of sport
run in the corridor
send text messages in class
stand up for the teacher
stay late
study maths every day

We don't have to wear a uniform.
We have to do a lot of homework.
We mustn't eat in class.

13 Change the words in **bold**. Use **needn't** or **need to**.

- ▶ We **don't have to** leave yet. needn't
- ▶ You **must** discuss that with your parents. need to
- 1 You **don't have to** come to the meeting. _____
- 2 We **must** try harder. _____
- 3 Peter **doesn't have to** wait for us. _____
- 4 Do we **have to** empty the bin? _____
- 5 I **must** write to my uncle. _____
- 6 We **don't have to** turn off the computers. _____
- 7 Does she **have to** work on Sunday? _____
- 8 You **don't have to** decide yet. _____
- 9 You **must** find your glasses. _____
- 10 When do you **have to** arrive? _____

14

GAME

Say three sentences about a sport, using **have to**, **mustn't** and **don't have to**. Can your partner guess the sport? You can use the words below or your own ideas.

Sports	Rules
basketball	be able to swim
cricket	be tall
diving	kick a ball
football	run fast
golf	throw a ball
water polo	wear boots

You don't have to run fast.

You mustn't kick the ball.

You have to be able to swim.

Is it water polo?

Should

We use **should** to give advice or recommendations.
*You **should** go to bed. You look tired.*
*I **shouldn't** drink cola. It's bad for my teeth.*
*'Where **should** we go?' 'Let's go to the cinema.'*
*'**Should** I phone my parents?' 'Yes, you **should**.'*

We can also use **must** for recommendations, but it is much stronger than **should**.
*You **should** watch that film. It's good.*
*You **must** watch that film. It's brilliant.*

***15** Dora's friend is giving her advice. Complete the sentences with *should* or *shouldn't*.

- ▶ You should get more exercise.
- 1 You _____ eat a lot of fast food.
- 2 You _____ walk to school.
- 3 You _____ look at a computer all day.
- 4 You _____ drink water.
- 5 You _____ eat fruit and vegetables.
- 6 You _____ sit at a desk all day.
- 7 You _____ drink a lot of coffee.
- 8 You _____ get eight hours of sleep.



***16** **GAME** Work in pairs. Read the situations and make suggestions. How many suggestions can you think of?

- ▶ You find some money on the bus.

You *should* give it to the driver.

You *shouldn't* spend it.

- 1 You arrive home but you can't find your keys. No one is in the house.
- 2 You see your friend's diary. You would like to know what he or she thinks about you.
- 3 You are on a bus. An inspector gets on but you can't find your ticket.
- 4 You are sitting in a café but the waiter doesn't come to your table.
- 5 You are doing a test and you see the person next to you looking at their mobile phone.

***17** **16.3** Correct the mistakes in bold. Listen and check.



- ▶ Do I **must** bring my PE kit?

Do I have to

- 1 **We mustn't to get up** late tomorrow. We've got an exam.

- 2 Look at the sign. **You shouldn't smoke** here.

- 3 **You needn't to explain** what happened.

- 4 **Ted should reads** that book.

- 5 **You mustn't help** me carry the bags. They aren't heavy.

- 6 **Should I to buy** this? It's expensive.

- 7 **Jess musted look after** her little brother yesterday.

- 8 **Jamie have to practise** the piano every day.



Self-evaluation Rate your progress.



1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			

Reading and writing

1 What do the signs say? Match 1–5 with A–H.
You don't have to use all the letters.

- ▶ You can buy a drink here. H
- 1 You mustn't cycle here. ____
- 2 You should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. ____
- 3 You don't have to bring your mobile phone. ____
- 4 You mustn't eat food here. ____
- 5 You can't cycle here at the weekend. ____

A

No food in the swimming pool.

B

We sell all models of bicycles

C

Cycle club

Tuesday and Thursday evenings
Come and join us!

D

Essential kit
hat
suncream
water

Non-essential kit
mobile phone
swimming costume
sandwiches

E

No cycling!

F

Turn off your mobile phone

G

5

Five-a-day

We recommend you have five portions of fruit and vegetables every day.

H

Cold drinks for sale

2 Read the letter about school exams, then read sentences 1–6 and decide if each sentence is true or false.

As you know, school exams will start next week. Please read this information carefully.

- You must arrive at school by 8.30 a.m.
- You must bring a black pen.
- You can bring a bottle of water if you want to. You can't bring any food.
- You don't have to stay until the end of the exam. You can leave when you've finished all the questions.
- You mustn't bring a mobile phone or other electronic device.
- Ideally, you should go to bed early on the night before an exam.

▶ You shouldn't arrive later than 8.30. True

- 1 You don't need any pens. ____
- 2 You mustn't take any drinks into the exam. ____
- 3 You mustn't take any food into the exam. ____
- 4 You must stay until the end of the exam, and you mustn't leave before the end. ____
- 5 Don't bring a mobile phone. They are not allowed in the exam. ____
- 6 It's a good idea to go to bed early the night before the exam. ____



3 Henry is writing about a music festival. Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ The Soundwaves festival is brilliant. You ___ see lots of amazing bands.
A can **B** must **C** could
- 1 I ___ go last year because I was revising for my exams.
A could **B** couldn't **C** didn't have to
- 2 Although I didn't go to the festival, I ___ watch it on TV.
A could **B** had to **C** was able to
- 3 You ___ camp if you are under sixteen. But I'm OK because I'm seventeen.
A can't **B** mustn't **C** couldn't
- 4 You ___ camp. You can go home at the end of each day if you want to.
A have to **B** don't have to **C** mustn't
- 5 You ___ buy tickets before the festival starts. You can't buy them when you arrive.
A should **B** have to **C** don't have to
- 6 You ___ bring sunscreen and a raincoat. Sometimes it's hot and sometimes it rains all day.
A have to **B** should **C** needn't

4 Write sentences about yourself when you were five and eleven. Use *could*, *couldn't*, *had to* and *didn't have to*.

When I was five I could swim 50 metres.
When I was eleven I didn't have to wear school uniform.

Listening

5 R4.1 You will hear Charlie talking to his grandpa about the past. Write the numbers in the correct place in the table.

- 1 walk to school
 2 talk to friends
 3 go home straight after school
 4 play football in the street
 5 ask parents' permission
 6 buy sweets
 7 buy clothes



- 8 wear brother's old clothes
 9 use the internet
 10 go to the library
 11 do cookery
 12 learn woodwork
 13 make a box
 14 cook an egg

could	couldn't
had to	didn't have to
1	

6 R4.2 You will hear Tom talking to his mum about going to the cinema. Choose the correct answer A, B or C.



- ▶ Tom can go to the cinema.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 1 Tom has to do his homework first.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 2 Tom has to tidy his room tonight.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 3 Tom can stay in town after the film.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 4 Tom's mum has to go to a meeting tonight.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 5 Tom's dad can collect him.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know
- 6 Tom has to phone his dad now.
A Yes **B** No **C** Don't know

Speaking

7 Read the scenarios. Ask and answer questions with your partner. Use *can*, *could*, *have to*, *should*.

- 1 Ask about ability: You are the captain of a sports team. You need a fast runner. Ask your partner.

Can you run fast?

No, I can't. You should ask Ben.

- 2 Ask for permission: You're talking to your parents. You want to invite a friend to your house.
- 3 Make a request: You're looking for some shoes in a shop. You want some help and you see the shop assistant.
- 4 Ask about rules: You are in a job interview. You want to know about uniforms.
- 5 Ask for advice: Your friend lent you a book, but you've lost it. Ask your parents.

17 Question words

I can form and use question words and subject and object questions.

What, when, where, who, why, how



Some questions start with a question word (e.g. **when**, **what**, **where**, **how**).

How are you?

When did you do your homework?

We use **who** in questions about people. We use **what** in questions about things.

'Who is your maths teacher?'

'What did you do last night?'

Word order

When we use the verb **be**, we put the subject after the verb.

How are you?

When were you in London?

With other verbs, we put the subject between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.

Where have you been?

Why did you choose that?

What should I do?

When we use a preposition in a question, we put it at the end of the sentence.

Who were you talking to?

What is he looking for?

Where does he come from?

* 1 Write the questions.

- ▶ does/start/when/the film  When does the film start ?
- 1 you/are/where/going _____ ?
- 2 the exam/was/yesterday/how _____ ?
- 3 Fred/say/what/did _____ ?
- 4 Paul/when/buy/his laptop/did _____ ?

- 5 crying/Milly/is/why _____ ?
- 6 pronounce/how/'comb'/you/do _____ ?
- 7 can/tennis/where/play/we _____ ?
- 8 who/at the park/you/see/did _____ ?
- 9 to university/your brother/go/will/when _____ ?
- 10 names/their/what/were _____ ?

2 **17.1** Look at the bold words in the answers and write the correct question word. Then complete the questions. Listen and check.



- ▶ How do you get to school _____?
I get to school **by bus**.
- 1 _____?
The match was **on Thursday**.
- 2 _____?
I'm **fine**.
- 3 _____?
We rented bikes **at the sports centre**.
- 4 _____?
His favourite colour is **black**.
- 5 _____?
He's laughing **because I dropped my plate**.
- 6 _____?
They're going on holiday **in July**.
- 7 _____?
I met **Sam** at the café.
- 8 _____?
You spell it **A-U-T-U-M-N**.
- 9 _____?
I've been **at the supermarket**.
- 10 _____?
Yasmin starts her new job **next week**.

3 Work in pairs. Take turns to ask questions using the words below, and give true answers.

What	be your birthday
When	buy those shoes
Where	do yesterday/tomorrow
Why	eat for breakfast
How	have dinner
	go on holiday
	play sport
	spell your name
	get to school
	study English

When is your birthday?

The twelfth of June.

Why did you buy those shoes?

Because I loved the colour.

4 **17.2** Complete the questions with a word from each box. Listen and check.



afraid dream lunch interested listen
text messages sit to school

about in next to of to to with with

- ▶ What insects are you afraid _____ of _____?
- 1 Who do you go _____ _____?
- 2 What music do you _____ _____?
- 3 Who do you have _____ _____?
- 4 What sports are you _____ _____?
- 5 Who do you send _____ _____?
- 6 What do you _____ _____?
- 7 Who do you _____ _____?

5 Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the questions in exercise 4.

What insects are you afraid of?

I'm not afraid of insects but I am afraid of snakes.

6 Read the answers and write questions with *who*, *what* or *where*. Every sentence ends with a preposition.

- ▶ Who did you go to the beach with _____?
I went to the beach with Julia.
- 1 _____?
Toby was looking for his ticket.
- 2 _____?
I dreamt about a beautiful house.
- 3 _____?
Alice comes from Scotland.
- 4 _____?
They're waiting for Katie.
- 5 _____?
Carrie is worried about the exams.
- 6 _____?
I listened to that new album.
- 7 _____?
They're driving to Manchester.
- 8 _____?
She should talk to Leo.
- 9 _____?
I was thinking about my dinner.
- 10 _____?
He's spoken to his teacher.

What or which? Whose or who's?

We use **which** when we are choosing between a small number of things.



We use **what** when we are choosing between a large number of things.



We use **whose** in questions about possession.
'Whose is that jacket?' 'It's Amy's.'

Who's sounds the same as **whose**, but has a different meaning.

Who's that? = **Who is that?**

Who's your favourite singer? = **Who is your favourite singer?**

We can use **what**, **which** and **whose** with or without a noun. We use them without a noun if we know what they refer to, or if the noun comes later in the sentence.

Whose computer did you use?

'I like your **computer**.' 'Actually, it's not mine.'

'So, **whose** is it?'

*7 Complete the questions with *who's* or *whose*.

- ▶ Whose is the blue jacket? Ben's
- 1 _____ reading the newspaper? _____
- 2 _____ is that white laptop? _____
- 3 _____ sitting next to Theo? _____
- 4 _____ purse is pink? _____
- 5 _____ is the orange juice? _____
- 6 _____ the person with pink shoes? _____

*8 Now look at the picture and answer the questions in exercise 7.



*9 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the picture, using *whose* or *who's*.

Whose glasses are blue?

Alice's.

Who's eating a piece of cake?

Ben.

*10 17.3 Listen to questions with *who's* or *whose*. Tick ✓ the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| ▶ Frank | <input type="checkbox"/> | Frank's | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 Carla | <input type="checkbox"/> | Carla's | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Me | <input type="checkbox"/> | Mine | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Lucy | <input type="checkbox"/> | Lucy's | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Tim | <input type="checkbox"/> | Tim's | <input type="checkbox"/> |

*11 Complete the questions with *which* or *what*.

- ▶ They've got four flavours. which would you like?
- 1 _____ time is it?
- 2 There are two bags on the table. _____ is yours?
- 3 _____ colour do you want? Black or blue?
- 4 _____ are you going to do tomorrow?
- 5 _____ colour is the Japanese flag?

12 Complete the sentences with *who*, *whose*, *what* or *which*.

- ▶ 'What did he say to you?' 'Nothing.'
- '_____ did you speak to?' 'Dr Hayes.'
 - '_____ is your car?' 'This one.'
 - '_____ homework is this?' 'Mine.'
 - '_____ are you looking for?' 'My keys.'
 - '_____ pen did you borrow?' 'Oscar's.'
 - '_____ is she pointing at?' 'Something under the car.'
 - '_____ should I invite?' 'Invite everyone!'
 - '_____ sandwich?' 'The one with cheese.'



How + adjective/adverb

We can make questions with **how** + an adjective or adverb.

How old is he?

How fast can you run?

How often do you go to the gym?

We can make questions with **how long**.

'How long have you studied English?' 'Five years.'

'How long will it take to cook dinner?' 'Half an hour.'

'How long does the film last?' 'About two hours.'

We can make questions with **how much** and **how many**.

How much food have we got?

How many plates do you need?

We can also use **how much** without a noun.

'How much does it cost?' 'Twelve pounds.'

'How much do you weigh?' '50 kilos.'

13 Complete the questions with some of the words in the box.

big fast hard hot hungry late long
often old tall

- ▶ 'How hungry are you at the moment?' 'Very. I'd love a pizza.'
- 'How _____ are you?' 'Fifteen.'
 - 'How _____ is it today?' 'About twenty degrees.'
 - 'How _____ can you run?' 'About ten kph.'
 - 'How _____ do you eat chips?' 'About once a week.'
 - 'How _____ are you?' '1.55 metres.'
 - 'How _____ is your English lesson?' 'An hour.'
 - 'How _____ do you go to bed?' 'About half past nine.'
 - 'How _____ is your house?' 'It's got three bedrooms.'
 - 'How _____ do you study?' 'I do two hours of homework every night.'

14 Work in pairs. Ask your partner the questions from exercise 13.

How hungry are you at the moment?

Not very. I've just had breakfast.

15 Circle the correct option.



- ▶ How much / many meat have we got in the fridge?
- How much / many eggs do you put in an omelette?
 - How much / many is a kilo of apples?
 - How much / many pieces of cake did you eat?
 - How much / many homework do you have this weekend?
 - How much / many does a ticket cost?
 - How much / many people were at the match?

16 **17.4** Complete the questions with *how long*, *how often* or *how much*. Listen and check. Then match them with the answers (a–k).



- ▶ How long have you lived here? j
- _____ do you clean your teeth? _____
 - _____ did your watch cost? _____
 - _____ does it take to get from London to Beijing by plane? _____
 - _____ does an elephant weigh? _____
 - _____ is a year? _____
 - _____ have you been to concerts? _____
 - _____ does your phone battery last? _____
 - _____ does the moon go round the Earth? _____
 - _____ coffee do you drink? _____
 - _____ are the Olympic Games? _____
- a About a week, normally.
b Once every four years.
c About ten hours.
d £35.
e Twice a day.
f 365 days.
g Once every 28 days.
h About 5,000 kg.
i Never!
j All my life.
k Three cups a day.

Question words: subject and object

Who, what, which, how much or how many can be the subject or object of a question.

Subject

'Who invited you?' 'Tom invited me.'

When the question word is the subject, we do not use the question form of the verb. We use the affirmative form and word order.

'Which phone costs more?' 'This one costs more.'

'How many people can come tomorrow?' 'About fifty people can come.'

'What is happening?' 'Nothing's happening.'

Object

'Who did you invite?' 'I invited Gemma and Beth.'

When the question word is the object, we use the question form of the verb.

'Which phone do you want?' 'I want that one.'

'How many people can you see?' 'I can see six people.'

'What are you making?' 'I'm making a chocolate cake.'

*17 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.



Sam Tony

▶ Who phoned his friend? Sam

1 Who did he phone? _____



Iris Suzy

2 Who painted the picture? _____

3 Who did she paint? _____



Brian

4 Who wrote the letter? _____

5 Who did he write to? _____

*18 Read the answers and write a subject question and an object question.

▶ Who lost his phone yesterday _____?

What did Michael lose yesterday _____?

Michael lost his phone yesterday.

1 Who _____?

What _____?

Mr Kean teaches geography.

2 Who _____?

What _____?

Libby is going to eat fish and chips.

3 Who _____?

Who _____?

Beth saw Mary at the cinema.

4 What _____?

What _____?

The car crashed into the café.

5 Who _____?

Who _____?

Pete is helping Ryan.

*19



Work in groups of three. Look at the examples and write ten quiz questions with *Who*, *What* or *How many*. Think about famous people, geography, nature and sport.

Who wrote the play 'Romeo and Juliet'?

What is the tallest building in the world?

What bird can swim but can't fly?

How many players are there in a basketball team?

- 20 GAME** Work with another team. Ask and answer your quiz questions from exercise 19. Which team has most correct answers?

What bird can swim but can't fly?

I think it's a penguin.

Correct!

- 21** **17.5** Read the magazine interview with a film star and complete the questions with the correct question words. Then listen and check your answers.



- Q: What is your earliest memory?
 A: Sitting in a high chair in my parents' kitchen.
 Q: ¹ _____ have you known your best friend?
 A: For twenty years. We met at school.
 Q: ² _____ is your hero?
 A: Meryl Streep. I think she's simply the best film actress ever.
 Q: ³ _____ would you most like to live?
 A: In Paris. There's so much history, so many great buildings – and the best food in the world.
 Q: ⁴ _____ pets have you had?
 A: I've never had any. I'm allergic to most animals!
 Q: ⁵ _____ were you happiest? ⁶ _____?
 A: Last week. Because I was with my family.
 Q: ⁷ _____ was your most embarrassing moment?
 A: I was talking to a journalist about my latest film and I couldn't remember the name of the director!
 Q: ⁸ _____ do you eat chocolate?
 A: Every day, if possible.
 Q: ⁹ _____ is your favourite word?
 A: Friendship.
 Q: ¹⁰ _____ do you relax?
 A: By going to the gym – or by eating chocolate.

- 22** Work in pairs. Interview your partner using the questions from exercise 21.

What is your earliest memory?

Riding my bike on the road.

- 23** Read the answers and write the questions. Use the ideas in brackets.

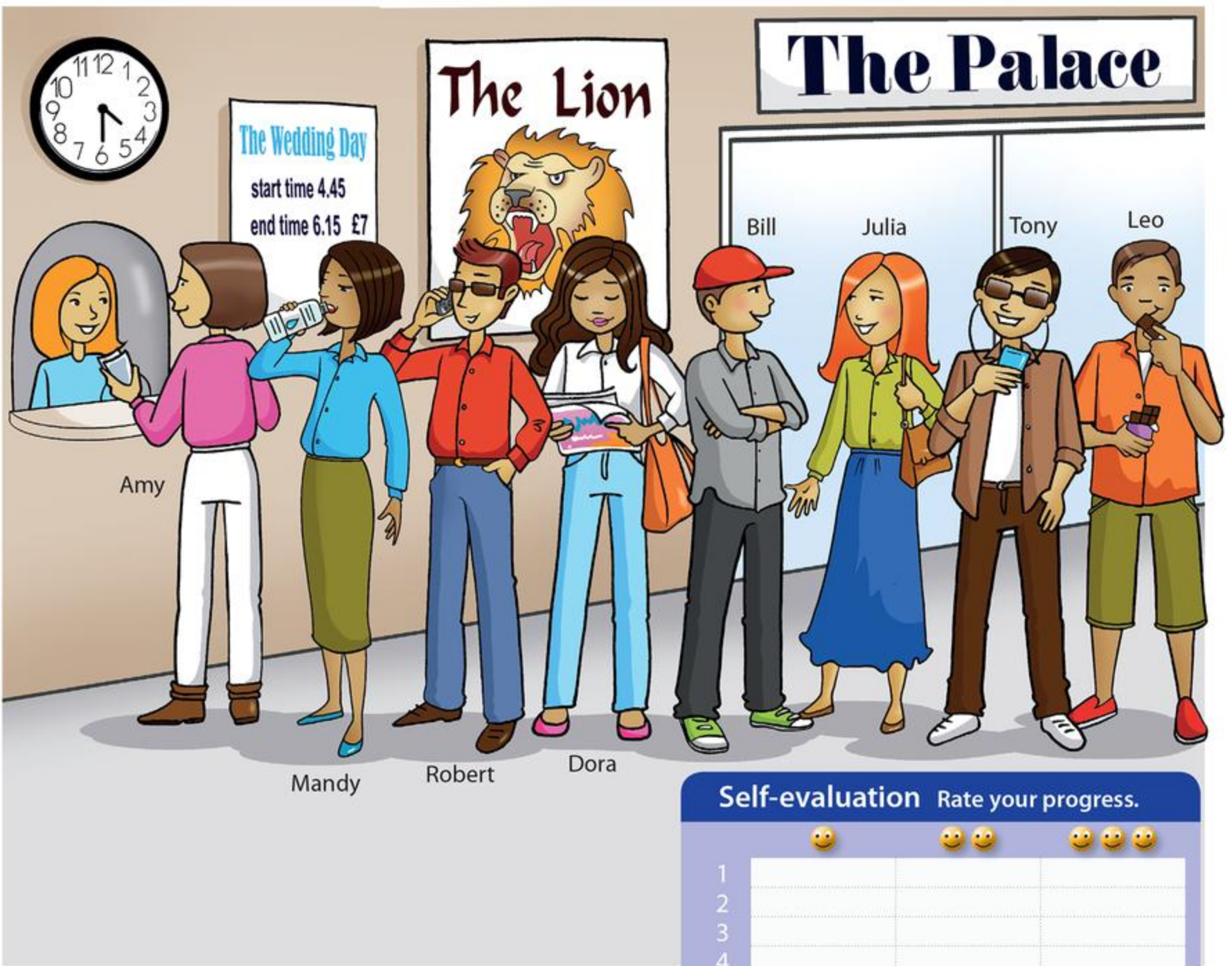
- ▶ How long have you studied English ?
 (study English)
 For five years.
 1 _____ ?
 (laptop cost)
 £500.
 2 _____ ?
 (shout at your sister)
 Because I was angry.
 3 _____ ?
 (cook dinner)
 My mum.
 4 _____ ?
 (favourite flavour)
 Strawberry ice cream.
 5 _____ ?
 (play sport)
 Twice a week.
 6 _____ ?
 (get up on Saturdays)
 At ten o'clock.
 7 _____ ?
 (travel to America)
 By plane.
 8 _____ ?
 (tennis racket/use)
 Katie's.
 9 _____ ?
 (spend at the swimming pool)
 About two hours.
 10 _____ ?
 (play basketball)
 At the sports centre.

- 24** Correct the mistakes in each question.

- ▶ Where ~~you went~~ yesterday? did you go
 1 'Who is this umbrella?' 'Mine.' _____
 2 What for are you looking? _____
 3 What well can you swim? _____
 4 Which did he say to you? _____
 5 How many people did go to the cinema last night? _____
 6 How much does it take to cook pasta?

 7 Who you had lunch with? _____
 8 'How are you shouting?' 'Because I'm angry!'

 9 Who's homework did he copy? _____
 10 'How long does it snow here?' 'It never snows.'



The Palace

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.



1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
22	
23	
24	
25	

25 GAME

Look at the picture and write six questions and the answers. Work in groups of three. Cover the picture and take turns to ask your questions. The first student to answer correctly wins a point.

how long how much how many
 what where which who whose

Who is talking on the phone?
 Robert.

Whose shirt is grey?
 Bill's.

What is Leo eating?
 Chocolate.

18 Question tags

I can use question tags in conversation and to check information.

Question tags



We add a question tag to make a statement into a question. We use question tags to check information, and also as a way of helping conversation by asking someone to respond.

She's Henry's sister, isn't she?

You don't like fish, do you?

We form question tags with an auxiliary verb (e.g. **are, have, can, will**) + a pronoun. We use the auxiliary verb and the pronoun to match the statement.

You're good at maths, aren't you?

He'll like this, won't he?

She didn't finish the exam, did she?

When the statement does not include an auxiliary verb (e.g. the present and past simple), we use **do, does, did** in the question tag.

She reads a lot, doesn't she?

They played well, didn't they?

If the statement is affirmative, we use a negative tag. If the statement is negative, we use an affirmative tag.

Helen has got a new bag, hasn't she?

It isn't very interesting, is it?

You didn't like the film, did you?

We can only use personal pronouns or **it/there** in question tags. We do not use names or other words.

Mary is clever, isn't Mary? isn't she?

That was difficult, wasn't that? wasn't it?

There isn't much food, is there?

* 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

aren't aren't can didn't do don't
have haven't isn't weren't won't

- ▶ You're British, aren't you?
- 1 You live in Manchester, _____ you?
- 2 You've got two sisters, _____ you?
- 3 You haven't got any brothers, _____ you?
- 4 You went to Greece on holiday last year, _____ you?
- 5 You'll be sixteen next year, _____ you?
- 6 You can't drive a car yet, _____ you?
- 7 You're hard-working, _____ you?
- 8 You were still asleep at eight o'clock this morning, _____ you?
- 9 You don't eat meat, _____ you?
- 10 It's your birthday today, _____ it?

* 2 18.1 Match the statements 1–10 with the question tags a–k. Listen and check.

- ▶ You spoke to your teacher, c
 - 1 The meal was nice, _____
 - 2 Max is quite annoying, _____
 - 3 People drive on the right in Britain, _____
 - 4 That phone isn't cheap, _____
 - 5 You can swim, _____
 - 6 You haven't tidied your room, _____
 - 7 They don't believe us, _____
 - 8 We're going to win, _____
 - 9 That wasn't funny, _____
 - 10 You've got your umbrella with you, _____
- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| a don't they? | g aren't we? |
| b haven't you? | h wasn't it? |
| c didn't you? | i is it? |
| d have you? | j isn't he? |
| e can't you? | k was it? |
| f do they? | |

3 Write the question tags.



- ▶ Daisy comes from Australia, doesn't she?
- 1 She's very tall, _____?
- 2 You're meeting Jess tonight, _____?
- 3 That film wasn't very good, _____?
- 4 Your parents know your teacher, _____?
- 5 You forgot to close the window, _____?
- 6 Tom's brother didn't win the match, _____?
- 7 We won't stay here long, _____?
- 8 You've learnt something new today, _____?
- 9 Pete and I can go to the cinema, _____?
- 10 Your brother likes golf, _____?

Pronunciation and meaning

There are two ways of using your voice in question tags.

The direction of the voice can go **down** at the end of the tag. This means that you know the answer. It isn't a real question. You expect the other person to agree and you are encouraging them to respond. We often use this to start conversations.

'It's cold, isn't it?' 'Yes, it's freezing.'

'You come from America, don't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'

The voice can go **up** on the tag. This means that you're not sure but you are checking the information. The other person may agree or disagree with you.

'I'm not late, am I?' 'Actually, the film's already started.'

'You'll need an umbrella.' 'Why? It's not raining, is it?' 'Yes! Look outside!'

4 **18.2** Listen to the sentences. Does the voice go up or down on the question tag? Draw an arrow.



- ▶ It's cold, isn't it? _____
- ▶ You come from America, don't you? _____
- ▶ I'm not late, am I? _____
- ▶ It's not raining, is it? _____
- 1 You're Turkish, aren't you? _____
- 2 The window is open, isn't it? _____
- 3 You saw the film, didn't you? _____
- 4 She doesn't like football, does she? _____
- 5 It wasn't very interesting, was it? _____
- 6 Bella will pass the exam, won't she? _____
- 7 There are two train stations here, aren't there? _____
- 8 You didn't miss the bus, did you? _____

5 **18.3** Complete the dialogues with question tags. Then listen and decide if the voice goes up or down. Draw an arrow.



- A**
- Emma: Your name is Kim March, isn't it?
- Kim: Yes, that's right.
- Emma: You aren't David March's sister, 1 _____?
- Kim: No, I'm not. I haven't got a brother.
- B**
- Tim: I've met you before, 2 _____?
- Alex: Have you?
- Tim: Yes. You were at Oscar's birthday party, 3 _____?
- Alex: I remember now. You're in Oscar's football team, 4 _____?
- Tim: That's right.
- C**
- Mum: Libby will pass her exam, 5 _____?
- Teacher: Well, she got a good mark in her test, 6 _____?
- Mum: Yes.
- Teacher: And she has done all her revision, 7 _____?
- Mum: Yes.
- Teacher: So, she should be fine.

6 Write six statements about your partner that you think are true. Then check the information with your partner.



(not) be	(not) listen to
(not) eat	(not) play
(not) get up	(not) study
(not) like	(not) wear

You don't like maths.

You don't like maths, do you?

Actually, I think maths is OK.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

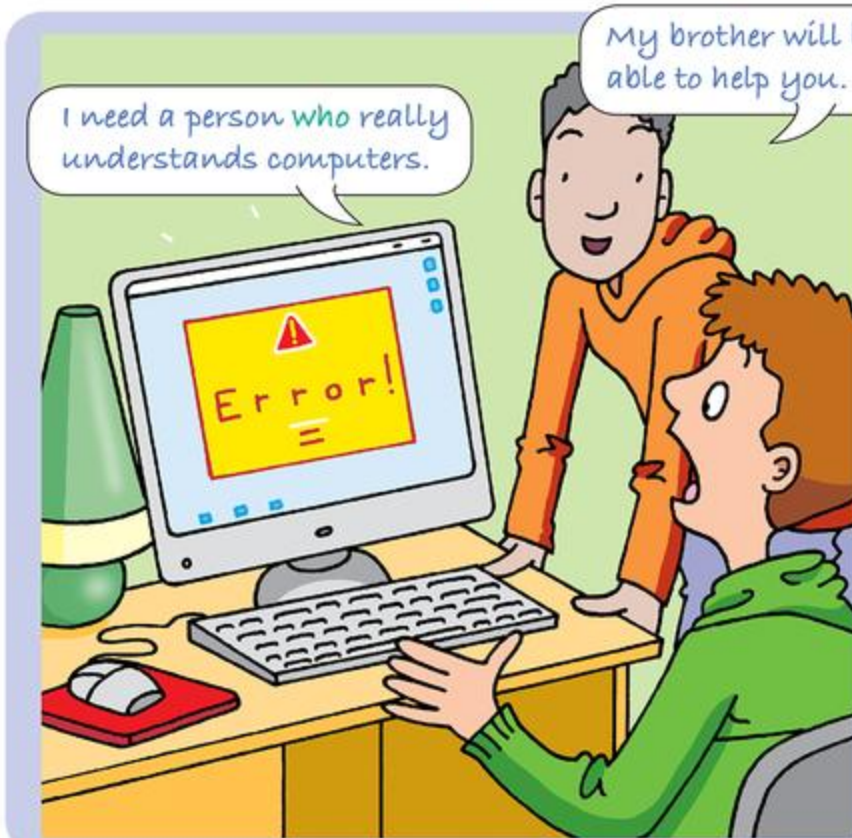
😊 😊😊 😊😊😊 😊😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			

19 Relative pronouns

I can use the relative pronouns *who*, *which* and *that* in relative clauses.

Who, which, that: subject relative pronouns



We use relative pronouns (**who**, **which**, **that**) to combine two sentences. The relative clause (in **green** in the examples below) describes the noun before it and identifies which person or thing we are talking about.

In these examples, the relative pronoun is the subject of the verb in the relative clause.

The waiter was very friendly. **He** served us.

The waiter **who served us** was very friendly.

The school has 2,000 pupils. **It** is opposite my house.

The school **which is opposite my house** has 2,000 pupils.

We use **who** for people, and **which** for things or animals. We can use **that** instead of **who** or **which**; it means the same.

Peter is the boy **who** (or **that**) wears red socks.

This is the computer **which** (or **that**) doesn't work.

* 1 Change *that* to *who* or *which*.

- ▶ Henry is the boy **that** won the tennis competition. who
- 1 My little brother has a toy **that** makes a loud noise. _____
- 2 I said hello to the woman **that** lives next door. _____
- 3 We're going to get the bus **that** leaves at ten past nine. _____
- 4 He gave me an apple **that** didn't taste very nice. _____
- 5 Mrs Evans was the teacher **that** helped me with my exam revision. _____
- 6 I put it in the folder **that** contains my old essays. _____

* 2 Match a–g to 1–6 and complete the sentences with *who* or *which*.

- ▶ A gorilla is an animal which e
- 1 A pilot is a person _____
- 2 A spider is an insect _____
- 3 An architect is someone _____
- 4 An artist is a person _____
- 5 A cat is an animal _____
- 6 A farmer is someone _____

- a ... paints pictures.
- b ... catches birds.
- c ... designs buildings.
- d ... grows food.
- e ... doesn't eat meat.
- f ... has eight legs.
- g ... flies planes.

* 3 19.1 Join the two sentences. Complete the second sentence using *that*. Listen and check.

- ▶ The girl is called Sally. She plays the piano.
The girl that plays the piano is called Sally.
- 1 I'm looking for the phone. It was on my desk.
I'm looking _____
- 2 The man wasn't wearing glasses. He fell over the cat.
The man that fell _____
- 3 We'd like to see the film. It starts at six o'clock.
We'd like _____
- 4 The author became famous. She wrote those novels.
The author _____
- 5 The glass is broken. It fell on the floor.
The glass _____



Who, which, that: object relative pronouns

Who, which or **that** can be the object of the relative clause.

The film was very good. We watched **it**.

The film **that** we watched was very good.

The film **which** we watched was very good.

There's the actor. You really like **him**.

There's the actor **who** you really like.

There's the actor **that** you really like.

When the relative pronoun is the object, it is not necessary to include it in the sentence.

The film (that) **we watched** was very good.

There's the actor (who) **you really like**.

But when the relative pronoun is the subject, we have to include it in the sentence.

You're the person **who spoke** to Suzy.

~~You're the person spoke to Suzy.~~

When the verb in a relative clause has a preposition (**talk to, look for**), we normally keep the preposition after the verb.

I know the girls. Suzy is **talking to** them.

I know the girls **who Suzy is talking to**.

The book had disappeared. She was **looking for** it.

The book **that she was looking for** had disappeared.

4 Complete the relative clauses using *who* or *which* and the correct form of the verb in brackets.



▶



3



1



4



2



5

▶ That is the woman who she met yesterday.

1 Those are the shoes _____ last week. (buy)

2 That is the singer _____ to last night. (listen)

3 That is the book _____ at the weekend. (read)

4 That is the actor _____ on TV yesterday. (watch)

5 That is the chocolate cake _____ two days ago. (bake)

5 Complete the sentences using *who*, *which* or *that*. Use two relative pronouns in each sentence.

▶ We visited some friends. We've known them for years.

We visited some friends who/that we've known for years.

▶ The house is in Bristol. We want to buy it. The house which/that we want to buy is in Bristol.

1 She's wearing the dress. She bought it in Paris. She's wearing the _____.

2 Can I talk to the doctor? I saw him yesterday. Can I talk to the _____?

3 Carrie really enjoyed the omelette. You made it. Carrie really enjoyed the _____.

4 They are the musicians. I was thinking of them. They are the _____.

5 Theo spends all the money. He earns it. Theo spends all the _____.





6 The letter has just arrived. You sent it last week. The _____ has just arrived.

7 The book is very interesting. You lent it to me. The _____ is very interesting.

8 The person is very annoying. I sit behind him. The _____ is very annoying.

6

Student A: turn to page 169. Student B: look at the table. Ask your partner questions and complete the table.

	House	Car
Jim		
Emma	53	
	9	
Lucy	120	
Ben	14	
Amy		
Max	5	

Who is the person who lives at number ...?

Who is the person who drives a ... car?

What colour is the car that drives?

What number is the house that lives at?

7 Look at the bold words. Are they the subject or the object of the relative clause? Write S or O. Put brackets round the relative pronoun if you can leave it out.

▶ They are looking for a man who wears a black jacket. S

▶ The house (which) they live in is next to the school. O

1 The meal that you prepared was excellent. ___

2 I saw a girl that you know at the cinema. ___

3 Mechanics are people who repair cars. ___

4 I'm still thinking about something which happened yesterday. ___

5 There was a question that he couldn't answer. ___

6 He's a musician that I'd like to see. ___

7 She bought a car which looked fantastic. ___

8 People that worry about spiders are silly. ___

9 The man who I was talking to is a friend of my dad's. ___

10 That was the first thing which they did. ___

8

Ask your partner questions using relative pronouns and the words in the table.

person	afraid of
singer	like
sports team	hate
film star	
thing	do
job	eat
food	meet
subject	see

What is the thing that you are most afraid of?

Spiders!

Who is the singer that you'd most like to see?

9 19.2 Listen to Jason talking about photos from his holiday. Number the pictures 1-6.



14 Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence, using a relative clause. Leave out the relative pronoun if you can.

▶ The hotel is very nice. We're staying there.
The hotel where we're staying is very nice.

▶ The bus has broken down. They normally take it.
The bus they normally take has broken down.

- 1 I'm looking for people. They can make cakes.

- 2 The watch is very expensive. She bought it yesterday.

- 3 I can't buy a car. It doesn't start.

- 4 I like the time of year. Everyone goes on holiday.

- 5 The boy doesn't look very happy. You laughed at him.

- 6 Students often get better jobs. They speak English.

- 7 I don't want to work at the factory. My dad works there.

- 8 Someone has to wash up the pans. You used them.

- 9 I'd like a computer. It recognizes the human voice.

- 10 The lake sounds lovely. You go swimming there.

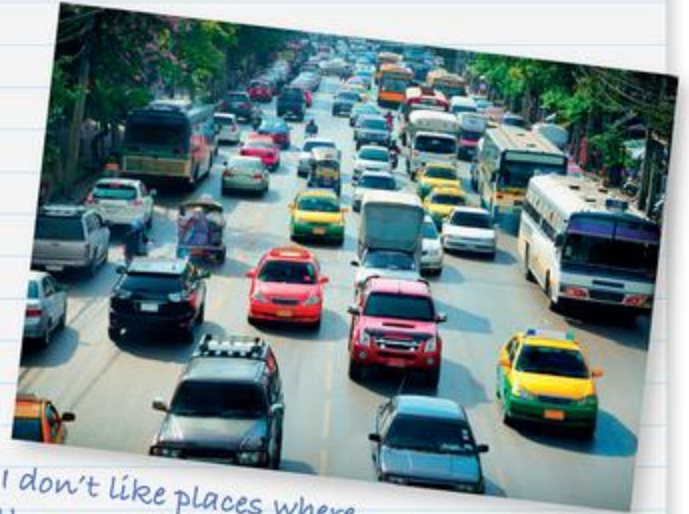
15 Write sentences about yourself using relative clauses and the words in the table.



I like I don't like	days people places things	who which that when where
------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------



I like people who laugh a lot.



I don't like places where there are a lot of cars.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.



1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			

20 Connectors

I can use connectors to link ideas in sentences.

And, but, or

Although he's rich, he hasn't got a big house or a fast car.

Why not?



We use **and** to add ideas.

*She bought a pen **and** three pencils.*

*I go running **and** cycling.*

We use **but** to talk about contrasting ideas.

*I like running **but** I can't stand swimming.*

*He bought a new car **but** it broke down in the first week.*

We use **or** when we talk about two options.

*Do you prefer meat **or** fish?*

*I'll probably read a book **or** watch TV.*

Because he lives on a huge yacht!



We normally use **or** instead of **and** in negative sentences.

*Some people can't read **or** write.*

*They didn't phone **or** send a text.*

We use **and** or **or** between the last two items in a list.

We add a comma between the other items.

*I've visited London, Manchester **and** Edinburgh.*

*She doesn't eat eggs, milk **or** cheese.*

* 1 Complete the sentences with *and*, *but* or *or*.

- ▶ Would you like orange juice or apple juice?
- 1 They like dancing _____ they hate loud music at discos.
- 2 He got up _____ walked out of the room.
- 3 The sun was shining _____ he didn't go outside.
- 4 He didn't smile _____ say hello.
- 5 She went to Paris _____ she didn't see the Eiffel Tower.
- 6 He wasn't wearing a hat, a coat _____ a scarf.
- 7 He drank a cup of coffee _____ ate some toast.
- 8 Are you going to university _____ are you going to get a job when you leave school?
- 9 On holiday, I'm going to read some books, relax by the pool _____ play tennis.
- 10 I told them a joke _____ nobody laughed.

* 2 Write six sentences about yourself, using *and*, *but* and *or*. Use each word twice.

I often get up early and go for a run.

I went shopping on Saturday but I didn't buy anything.

My mum doesn't like apples or pears.

* 3 Student A says the first part of a sentence from exercise 2, ending with *and*, *but* or *or*. Student B guesses the rest of the sentence.

I went shopping on Saturday but ...

you forgot your money.

* 4 20.1 Listen and match 1–10 with the sentence endings a–j.

- a clean his teeth. ____
- b I can play the drums. ____
- c chips. ____
- d I really liked it. ____
- e didn't enjoy it. 1
- f told her about the accident. ____
- g couldn't find her. ____
- h play the guitar. ____
- i tea? ____
- j it didn't taste nice. ____

Because, so, although

We use **because** to say the reason why something happens.

He failed his exam **because** he didn't revise.

We use **so** to talk about the result of something.

They were very tired, **so** they went to bed early.

We can use **because** and **so** to express the same idea.

They didn't play tennis **because** it was raining.

It was raining, **so** they didn't play tennis.

We use **although** to talk about a contrast.

Although Mary likes coffee, she doesn't like tea.

Sentences with **although** can have the same meaning as sentences with **but**.

Mary likes coffee **but** she doesn't like tea.

We can put **although** and **because** at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence. When it is at the beginning of the sentence, there is a comma at the end of the clause. We can only put **so** in the middle.

Because it was raining, they didn't play tennis.

He's working as a waiter **although** he wants to be a musician.

So they didn't play tennis, it was raining.

* 5 Look at the bold words. Are they the reason or the result?

- ▶ He opened the window **because** it was hot.
reason
- ▶ My room was dirty, **so** I cleaned it. *result*
- 1 Everyone likes Mr Harris **because** he doesn't give much homework. _____
- 2 The bus was late, **so** I phoned my dad. _____
- 3 George was hungry, **so** he bought some chips.

- 4 I didn't read the book **because** it looked boring.

- 5 You broke it, **so** you have to repair it. _____

* 6 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ I love reading, **because** / **so** I often go to the library.
- 1 She laughed **because** / **so** it was funny.
- 2 It snowed, **because** / **so** we stayed at home.
- 3 He was feeling ill, **because** / **so** he went to bed.
- 4 I couldn't pay **because** / **so** I'd lost my money.
- 5 They turned the lights on **because** / **so** it was getting dark.
- 6 She wants to become a doctor, **because** / **so** she's studying science.
- 7 I can't talk to you now **because** / **so** I'm too busy.
- 8 The film was boring, **because** / **so** I fell asleep.

** 7 20.2 Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence using **so**. Then write them using **because**. Listen and check.



- ▶ I didn't have much money. I didn't buy the jacket.
 - a I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy the jacket.
 - b I didn't buy the jacket because I didn't have much money.
- 1 He ordered some water. He was thirsty.
 - a _____
 - b _____
- 2 It was very noisy. They couldn't sleep.
 - a _____
 - b _____
- 3 She cried. She cut herself.
 - a _____
 - b _____
- 4 There was too much traffic. We arrived late.
 - a _____
 - b _____
- 5 The teacher explained it again. No one understood it.
 - a _____
 - b _____

** 8 Tell your partner four things you did yesterday using **so** and **because**.

I was very hungry, **so** I had three pieces of toast for breakfast.

I got home late **because** I had a music lesson after school.

* 9 Rewrite the sentences with **although**.

- ▶ I'm not good at tennis but I like it.
Although I'm not good at tennis, I like it.
- 1 He's tired but he can't sleep.

- 2 It's expensive but I'm going to buy it.

- 3 She works hard but she doesn't earn much money.

- 4 Dave has a car but he prefers cycling.

- 5 We played badly but we won.

- 6 She borrowed my pen but she didn't say thank you.

- 7 I recognized her but I couldn't remember her name.

- 10 Work in pairs. Student B: turn to page 171. Student A: listen to Student B and complete the sentence with *although* or *because* and one of the endings from the table. Then swap roles.

Endings
he was at the beach
he wasn't working
he was feeling hot
he was afraid of flying
he was tired
Beginnings
She didn't live in a big house
She was crying
She won the prize
She finished the book quickly
She missed the film

He travelled by train ...

because he was afraid of flying.

When, while

We use **while** to talk about an event in progress when another event happens.

While John was skiing, he broke his leg.
I visited Paris while I was in France.

We use **when** to talk about an event that happens immediately before another event.

When I got home, I did my homework.
He was excited when he heard the news.

If the **when** or **while** clause comes first, we put a comma between the two clauses. We don't use a comma if the **when** or **while** clause comes at the end.

While John was skiing, he broke his leg.
John broke his leg while he was skiing.

- 11 Complete the sentences with *when* or *while*.

- ▶ The weather was great while we were in Turkey.
- _____ I saw Katie, I waved at her.
 - Someone's phone rang _____ I was speaking.
 - _____ they were at the beach, they went swimming.
 - _____ the teacher asked him a question, he couldn't remember the answer.
 - My sister turned off the television _____ I was watching it.
 - _____ the water boiled, Julia made some tea.
 - Frank listened to the radio _____ he was cooking dinner.
 - _____ he'd finished his research, he wrote the essay.

- 12 Complete the sentences 1–6 about the pictures. Use *when* or *while*.



a cycle/to work



d the ambulance/arrive



b see/the accident



e be/at the hospital



c wait for/the ambulance



f feel/better

- While he was cycling to work, he had an accident.
- _____, she called an ambulance.
- _____, they talked.
- _____, it took him to hospital.
- _____, he watched a lot of TV.
- _____, he went home.

13 **20.3** Complete the dialogue with the correct connectors. Listen and check.



although and because but or so
when while

Beth: Where were you yesterday?

Vicky: I had to go to the hospital because I hurt my foot.

Beth: How did you do that?

Vicky: It happened ¹_____ I was coming home from the sports centre. There are no street lights on Sandy Lane, ²_____ it was really dark. There was a hole ³_____ I didn't see it. I tripped ⁴_____ fell over.

Beth: Ouch! So what happened next?

Vicky: I couldn't walk ⁵_____ even stand up. There was no one else on the street, ⁶_____ I had to phone my parents.

Beth: Did they take you to the hospital?

Vicky: Yes. ⁷_____ we arrived at the hospital I had to wait for two hours. That was difficult ⁸_____ my foot was really hurting. Finally, they did an X-ray.

Beth: And what was the result?

Vicky: ⁹_____ it was very painful, the foot wasn't broken. They put a bandage on it ¹⁰_____ gave me crutches to walk with.

Beth: How do you feel now?

Vicky: It doesn't hurt too much now, ¹¹_____ I can't walk ¹²_____ sit at a desk at the moment. So no school for me!

Beth: That's lucky, isn't it?

14 **GAME**

Work in pairs. Write eight sentences using each word or phrase once. After eight minutes, swap your sentences with another pair to check them. Who has the most correct sentences?



I went to bed early although I wasn't tired

but I had to walk I was living in Beijing or I opened the door

go swimming I broke my leg because My bike was broken I couldn't find it

My teacher was angry I hadn't done my homework turned on the light I went to bed early

and I couldn't ride my bike I was looking for my watch

I wasn't tired while although I learnt Chinese

so I fell over when

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

😊 😊😊 😊😊😊

1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			

Reading and writing

1 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ She looked for her keys but
 - A she found them in her bedroom.
 - B she needed them.
 - C she couldn't find them.
- 1 You come from Manchester,
 - A isn't it?
 - B aren't you?
 - C don't you?
- 2 Although she'd studied hard,
 - A she failed the exam.
 - B she passed the exam.
 - C her teacher was very happy.
- 3 Can I see the book
 - A that you're reading?
 - B which you're reading it?
 - C what you're reading?
- 4 Who's
 - A is that bag?
 - B your best friend?
 - C phone did you borrow?
- 5 Tom didn't win,
 - A did Tom?
 - B didn't Tom?
 - C did he?
- 6 Who
 - A wrote 'Romeo and Juliet'?
 - B did write 'Romeo and Juliet'?
 - C did he write 'Romeo and Juliet'?

2 Match 1–6 with A–I to complete the conversation. You don't need to use all the letters.

- Beth: D
 Lucy: It was great.
 Beth: 1 ____
 Lucy: I went skiing.
 Beth: 2 ____
 Lucy: I know, but we didn't ski on snow. It was an artificial ski slope.
 Beth: 3 ____
 Lucy: My cousins, Paul and Jane. They live near the ski centre.
 Beth: 4 ____
 Lucy: About three hours. But then we had to stop because one of my cousins had an accident.
 Beth: 5 ____
 Lucy: Paul.

- Beth: 6 ____
 Lucy: He fell over and hurt his leg. It wasn't serious, but he couldn't continue skiing.

- A How long did you ski for?
- B It's too hot for skiing, isn't it?
- C When did you finish?
- D How was your weekend?
- E What happened?
- F Which one?
- G What did you do?
- H You like skiing, don't you?
- I Who did you go with?

3 Read the email from Julia about her holiday in Australia. Choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

Hi Anna

We're in Australia at the moment. We're visiting the Palmer family. You remember them, B you? They're the people ¹ ____ used to live next door to us. They moved to Australia last year ² ____ Mrs Palmer got a job in Sydney.

There are lots of things ³ ____ you can do in Sydney. You can visit museums, watch sport ⁴ ____ go to the beach. And the weather is great, ⁵ ____ you can spend all the time outside.

⁶ ____ I get home, I'll show you the photos of the places that we visited and the people ⁷ ____ we met.


But do you know something? ⁸ ____ it's a great place, I wouldn't like to live here. I wouldn't be able to see my friends, ⁹ ____ I?

Julia

- ▶ A do B don't C aren't
- 1 A who B which C what
- 2 A so B because C while
- 3 A who B that C where
- 4 A so B or C but
- 5 A because B although C so
- 6 A When B While C Because
- 7 A where B which C that
- 8 A Although B Because C But
- 9 A do B wouldn't C would


4 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than two words.

- ▶ It was cold but he wasn't wearing a coat.
Although it was cold, he wasn't wearing a coat.
- Who does that car belong to?
 _____ is that car?
 - I know you can't swim.
 You can't swim, _____?
 - He can't play football because he's hurt his leg.
 He's hurt his leg, _____ he can't play football.
 - She was talking to someone with long hair.
 The person _____ talking to had long hair.
 - John phoned me during dinner.
 John phoned _____ I was having dinner.

5  Read the extract from an email. Then write an email about a place you would like to visit.


I would like to visit Italy because I'm interested in history. It is a place where you can see a lot of fascinating towns and buildings. Although I don't speak Italian, I would like to live there one day.

Listening

6  **R5.1** Listen to the questions and choose the correct answer A, B or C.

- ▶ A When it was hot.
 (B) Because it was hot.
 C Although it was hot.
- A For ten years.
 B Ten years ago.
 C In ten years.
 - A We saw some interesting animals.
 B Mary saw me.
 C I saw Mary.

- A It's Oscar's.
 B It's a geography book.
 C It's Oscar.
- A Yes, I do.
 B I go to secondary school.
 C I go to the Manston School.
- A It's Emily's piano.
 B It's Emily.
 C She's playing some classical music.
- A Yes, I do.
 B Me too.
 C No, it isn't.

7  **R5.2** Listen to sentences 1–6. Do sentences a–f have the same meaning? Write Yes or No.

- ▶ Although I was tired, I played football. Yes
- You're sixteen, aren't you? _____
 - This is the person who helped us. _____
 - We ate dinner and then watched TV. _____
 - I don't like tea or coffee. _____
 - A doctor visited Jill. _____
 - I didn't buy the phone because it was too expensive. _____

Speaking

8 Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions to complete your text. Use the question words in the box. Student A: look at page 169 for answers. Student B: look at page 171 for answers.

Student A

what what time who whose why

Andy arrived home at _____ o'clock. He was tired because _____. He was also hungry. He found some _____ in the fridge. While he was eating, _____ arrived. 'Oh no! What are you doing?' said his mum. It was _____'s birthday cake.

What time did Andy arrive home?

Student B

what what time who whose why

Emma got up at _____ o'clock. She was in a hurry because _____. She picked up _____ and went to school. On the bus, _____ sat next to her. 'That's not your bag, is it?' Emma looked at it. It was _____'s bag.

What time did Emma get up?

21 Zero and first conditional

I can use the zero and first conditional to talk about situations and results.

Zero conditional



We use conditional sentences to talk about the result of a possible situation.

Possible situation ('condition')	Result
If I'm tired,	I go to bed early.

We use the zero conditional to talk about things that are always true – for example, habits or scientific facts.
*If you **heat** chocolate, it **melts**.*
*If my dad **wakes up early**, he **goes** for a run.*

To form the zero conditional, we use the present tense in the **if** clause and in the main clause.

If + present simple	present simple
If it rains,	we don't do PE.
If I have an exam,	I revise very hard.

We can put the **if** clause at the start or end of the sentence. When the **if** clause comes first, we put a comma between the two clauses.

If he's on holiday, he gets up late.
He gets up late if he's on holiday.

*** 1** **21.1** Look at the rules from a radio quiz show. Match the beginnings 1–6 to the endings a–f. Then listen and check.

- If you give a correct answer, ... c
- If you give a wrong answer, ... ____
- If you don't answer in ten seconds, ... ____
- If the next player answers correctly, ... ____
- If you answer five questions correctly, ... ____
- If two players finish with the same score, ... ____

- you lose one point.
- you get two extra points.
- ~~you get two points.~~
- he or she gets one point.
- there is one more question, and the first person to answer correctly is the winner.
- you get no points and the next player tries to answer.

*** 2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- If the weather is nice, we usually have dinner outside. (have)
- I _____ sick if I eat too much chocolate. (feel)
- If Henry doesn't know a word, he _____ it up in a dictionary. (look)
- If you turn on a light bulb, it _____ hot. (get)
- Teachers _____ away your phone if you use it in a lesson. (take)
- If students _____ school uniform, the headteacher sends them home. (not wear)
- If it _____ enough, plants don't grow. (not rain)
- If Helen _____ her pen, I lend her mine. (have not got)

*** 3** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

not eat enjoy float forget play
not help not smoke

- If I forget my watch, I don't know the time.
- If people _____ their jobs, they normally work hard.
- Jason doesn't get any pocket money if he _____ his parents.
- If you drop a bottle in the sea, it _____.
- He gets very hungry if he _____ football after school.
- If you're vegetarian, you _____ meat.
- People are healthier if they _____.

First conditional

We use the **first conditional** to talk about a possible future situation and its result.

If it's sunny tomorrow, we'll go for a picnic.

If Max wants to come, I'll buy another ticket.

We use the present tense in the **if** clause but a future tense in the main clause.

Future condition	Result
If + present simple	will
If I'm tired tonight,	I'll go to bed early.
If you don't do your homework,	your teacher will be very annoyed.

We do not use **will** in the **if** clause.

If I will be tired tonight, I'll go to bed early.

If I'm tired tonight, I'll go to bed early.

Remember, we can put the **if** clause second. Use a comma when the **if** clause comes first.

We'll miss the train if you're late.

If you're late, we'll miss the train.

* 4 21.2 Listen to Louise and complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.



will do some gardening	will play computer games
will go for a walk	will play tennis
will go to the cinema	will read her book

If her aunt and uncle come, Louise will play tennis. Her brother ¹_____ and her parents ²_____.

If they don't come, Louise ³_____, her brother ⁴_____ and her parents ⁵_____.

* 5 Circle the correct option.



- ▶ If she invites / will invite me, I'll go.
- 1 If Tony passes his test, he buys / he'll buy a car.
- 2 She'll earn a lot of money if she wins / she'll win the competition.
- 3 If you go to the shops tomorrow, I meet / I'll meet you there.
- 4 If he doesn't / won't understand, I'll explain it.
- 5 We'll miss / We miss the film if the train is late.
- 6 If you don't / won't listen, you won't learn.
- 7 If you cook dinner, I / I'll do the washing-up.
- 8 They won't pass their exams if they don't / won't work harder.

* 6 Write **if** in the correct place to complete the sentences. Add a comma or capital letter if necessary.

- ▶ ^{if} it rains, we won't play tennis.
- ▶ ^s she'll leave our school ^{if} her parents move to London.

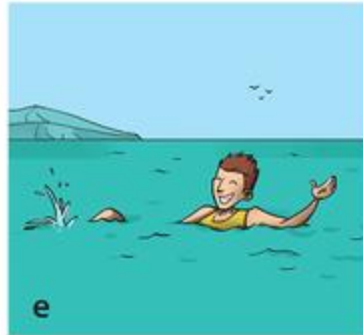
- 1 you go swimming I'll come with you.
- 2 he'll be late there's a lot of traffic.
- 3 they'll laugh you tell that joke.
- 4 we'll remember him we see him.
- 5 you don't like this programme we'll watch something else.
- 6 the post office is busy we won't wait.
- 7 we won't start dinner Sue isn't here.
- 8 the car isn't repaired we won't drive to Scotland.

* 7 21.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Listen and check.



- ▶ If you sell your bike, you'll get a lot of money. (sell, get)
- 1 If they _____ late, we _____ the film. (arrive, miss)
- 2 I _____ angry if Emily _____ for me. (be, not wait)
- 3 If you _____ down, we _____. (not slow, crash)
- 4 Ted _____ silly if he _____ that hat. (look, wear)
- 5 If Jack _____ the book, I _____ it to him. (need, lend)
- 6 If you _____ that watch, we _____ you a new one. (lose, not buy)
- 7 Lucy _____ the race if she _____ harder. (not win, not train)
- 8 They _____ you if you _____ to them like that. (not help, talk)

- 8 **21.4** Listen and match the pictures (a-f) with the *if* clauses (1-6). Then complete the sentences. Listen again and check.



- If the weather's good, we'll go to the beach. d
- If the weather's bad, _____
- If we go to the beach, _____
- If we don't leave early in the morning, _____
- If we go to London, _____
- If it rains all day, _____

- 9 **Work in pairs. Imagine you are going to go on holiday. Ask and answer questions using these ideas.**

Possible situations

the weather's good it rains
 there is a swimming pool there isn't a TV
 your car breaks down the plane is delayed
 your parents give you some money
 you don't like the food

What will you do if it rains?

If it rains, I'll read a lot of books.

- 10 We often use the first conditional to give warnings or advice. Complete the sentences using the verbs in the box or your own ideas.



be angry be locked out be thirsty
 get cold get fat get a headache lose
 miss not pass not sleep not work

- ▶ If you spend a long time on the computer, you'll get a headache.
- If you don't wear your coat, _____.
 - If you drink coffee after dinner, _____.
 - If they get up late, _____.
 - If he eats too many chips, _____.
 - If you lose your keys, _____.
 - If you don't study enough, _____.
 - If she doesn't drink enough water, _____.
 - If he doesn't play well, _____.
 - If you don't charge your phone, _____.
 - If he breaks my tennis racket, _____.

- 11 **Read the problems and write advice.**



I eat lots of fast food and I feel unhealthy.

If you eat more vegetables, you will feel healthier.

I don't go out much and I don't know many people.

I don't do much homework and I get bad marks at school.

I play a lot of computer games and I get headaches in the evening.

I don't tidy my bedroom and my parents get cross.

***12 Write conditional sentences using if.**

- ▶ we/see your brother – we/say hello
If we see your brother, we'll say hello.
- ▶ I/answer the phone – it/ring
I'll answer the phone if it rings.
- 1 Leo/be hungry – he/eat a sandwich
- 2 I/like the song – I/download it
- 3 we/go to the beach tomorrow – the sun/shine
- 4 you/feel tired – I/carry the bags
- 5 I/buy some more food – the fridge/be empty
- 6 we/not win – we/play badly
- 7 you/not take an umbrella – you/get wet
- 8 Kim/not visit her grandparents – she/has too much homework
- 9 I/not write it down – I/forget
- 10 you/not look for your keys – you/not find them

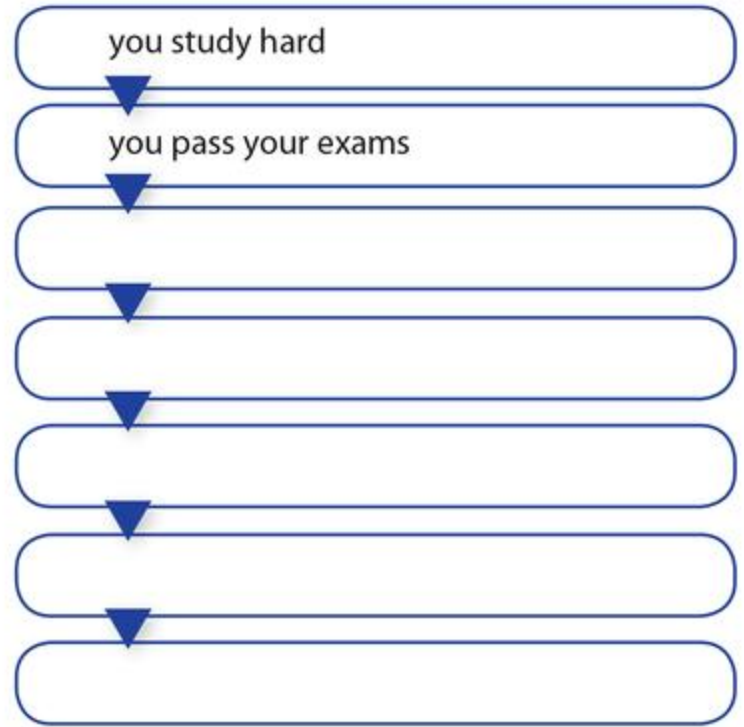
***13 Work in pairs. Look at the flow chart and take turns to make conditional sentences.**



If you don't hear your alarm, you'll wake up late.

If you wake up late, you'll miss the bus.

***14 GAME** Work in groups. Make your own flow chart. Complete the empty boxes and write the sentences. Which group can finish first? Which group has the best sentences?



If you study hard, you'll pass your exams.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			

22 Second conditional

I can use the second conditional to talk about unlikely or imaginary situations and results.

Second conditional



We use the **second conditional** to talk about unlikely situations in the present or future. The situation might happen but it probably won't.

*If I became prime minister, I'd create more public holidays.
A lot of people would die if an asteroid hit the Earth.*

We can also use it to imagine situations that are not real.
If my room was bigger, I'd put a table tennis table in it.

In the second conditional we use the past tense in the **if** clause, and **would** + the infinitive in the main clause. Remember: although we use the past simple, we are talking about a present or future situation.

Unlikely future condition	Result
<i>If + past simple</i>	<i>would ('d) / wouldn't + the infinitive</i>
If he got a job in Beijing,	he'd learn Chinese.
If I didn't eat any breakfast,	my mum would be worried.
If I met the Queen,	I wouldn't know what to say.

With personal pronouns, (*I, you, he, she, etc.*) we normally use the contracted form **'d** for **would**.
You'd earn more money if you worked harder.

We often use the phrase **if I were you** to give advice.
*If I were you, I'd wear a sweater today.
I'd do some more revision if I were you.*

Note that we say **if I were you**, not **if I was you**.

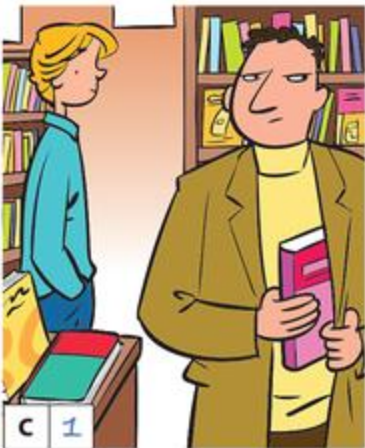
* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ If Fred had / would have more money, he'd buy a new guitar.
- 1 If I swam / would swim every day, I would feel better.
- 2 If Jack cleaned his room, his mum was / would be happy.
- 3 If he practised / would practise more, he'd be an excellent pianist.
- 4 If you asked / would ask Peter, he would help you.
- 5 If Gemma got up on time, she didn't / wouldn't miss the bus.
- 6 If people didn't / wouldn't use computers, everything would take longer.
- 7 If my sister wasn't annoying, I didn't / wouldn't argue with her.
- 8 If it was sunny, I would wear / wore sunglasses.

** 2 Change *would* to the contracted form *'d* where possible. If the contracted form is not possible, write *x*.

- ▶ If they checked their work, they would find some mistakes. they'd
- ▶ The plants would die if we didn't water them. x
- 1 If my best friend moved away, I would cry. _____
- 2 Paul would spend less money if he didn't buy coffee every day. _____
- 3 If he went to bed earlier, he would wake up earlier. _____
- 4 If we didn't like football, we would play rugby. _____
- 5 My parents would live near the sea, if they could find jobs there. _____
- 6 If the coach was better, the team would win more matches. _____

3 22.1 Listen and number the pictures.



4 22.1 Listen again. What would the people do in each case? Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.



complain to do homework look for
run away send a text message to tell

- If he saw someone stealing a book in a shop, he'd tell the shop assistant.
- If her teacher didn't come to her class, _____.
- If he couldn't open the bathroom door, _____ his parents.
- If she broke a window in her parents' house, _____.
- If his food was cold, _____ the waiter.
- If she found a wallet in the street, _____ the name and address.

5 Give advice to the people in exercise 4. Write sentences using *If I were you*.



- If I were you, I'd call the police.
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.



- If I joined a gym, I'd get fit. (join, get)
- If Jill _____ her, Sally _____ with her. (invite, go)
 - We _____ at six, if we _____ home at four thirty. (arrive, leave)
 - If you _____ football, we _____ each other on Saturdays. (not like, not see)
 - Sam _____ the book if it _____ 500 pages. (not read, have)
 - If we _____ the parcel first class, it _____ five pounds. (send, cost)
 - Anna _____ for the job if she _____ it. (not apply, not want)
 - If I _____ very rich, I _____ a Ferrari. (become, not buy)
 - If the internet _____, homework _____ much more difficult! (not work, be)
 - If Max _____ a basketball player, he _____ his job. (be, love)
 - I _____ my hand up if I _____ the answer. (not put, not know)

7 Work in pairs. Say the first part of a conditional sentence, using *if* and a situation in the box. Your partner completes the sentence.

You are ill and you have an exam.
A stranger speaks to you in a foreign language.
You drop your phone in a river.
Someone in front of you drops litter on the street.
Your friend doesn't invite you to his party.
You wait for a bus but it doesn't come.
You walk past a house and hear an alarm ringing.
You can't find a clean shirt for school.

If I was ill and I had an exam, ...

my mum would phone the school.

First or second conditional?

We use the **first conditional** to talk about future situations that are likely or possible.

*If you **want** a cake, I'll **make** one.*

*If it's **sunny** tomorrow, we'll **play** tennis.*

*Switch your phone off! If it **rings** in class, your teacher **will be** very cross.*

We use the **second conditional** to talk about present or future situations that are unlikely or imaginary.

*If the weather **was** better today, we'd **go** for a picnic.*

*I never take my phone to school. If it **rang** in class, my teacher **would be** very cross.*

** 8 22.2 Match 1–9 with a–j. Listen and check.

- ▶ If they watch that film, e
- 1 If there was a problem with my phone, ____
- 2 If you clean the car, ____
- 3 I'll make dinner tonight ____
- 4 If you got every answer right, ____
- 5 If your parents heard that song, ____
- 6 I'd lend you my bike ____
- 7 Those eggs will break ____
- 8 Your teacher wouldn't laugh ____
- 9 If your bike doesn't work, ____



- a if you drop them.
- b my brother will repair it.
- c if your phone rang in class.
- d I'll pay you five pounds.
- e they'll love it.
- f I'd take it back to the shop.
- g your teacher would be very surprised.
- h if you're tired.
- i they probably wouldn't like it.
- j if you needed it.

** 9 First or second conditional? Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ If Linda liked eggs, I'd make her an omelette. (make)
- ▶ If my dad turns the TV off, I'll go to bed. (turn)
- 1 If they drive to Spain, it _____ a long time. (take)
- 2 If George _____ red boots, he would look silly. (wear)
- 3 If they _____ in five minutes, they'll miss dinner. (not leave)
- 4 If you buy a cake, I _____ it! (eat)
- 5 If Mandy knew me, I think she _____ me. (like)
- 6 If we _____ this match, we'll play in the final next week. (win)
- 7 If you haven't got the map, you _____ their house. (not find)
- 8 If Ted worked harder, he _____ about exams. (not worry)
- 9 If Ryan _____ tired, he would play football with his friends. (not feel)
- 10 If Tanya _____ the doctor, she won't get better. (not visit)

** 10



Are the situations likely or unlikely? Write a sentence for each situation.

You go to university
 You become a professional footballer
 Your parents move to New York
 School finishes early
 You lose your phone
 A famous person visits your house
 There is an earthquake in your town
 You don't wake up on time

If I go to university, I'll study maths.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

23 I wish

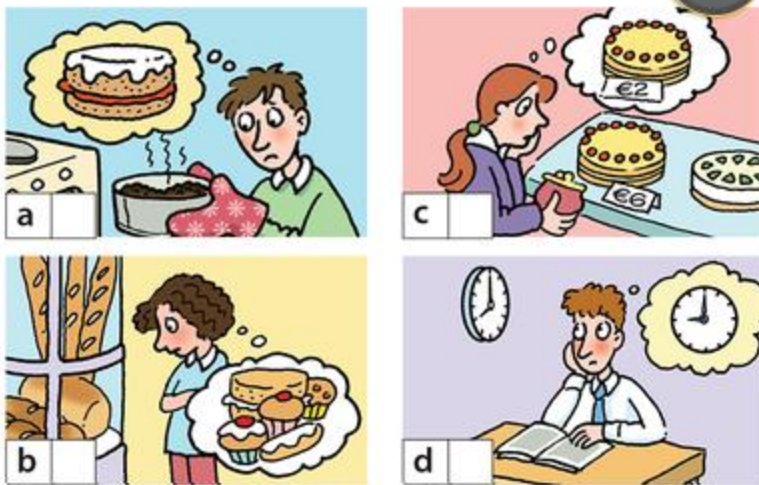
I can use *I wish* to talk about how I want situations to be different.

I wish + past simple



We use **I wish** + the past simple when we aren't happy with a present situation and want it to be different.
I'm tired. → *I wish I wasn't tired.*
 We can also use **were** instead of **was**.
I wish I were taller.
This tastes too sweet. → *I wish it tasted less sweet.*
The bus arrives late every day. → *I wish the bus **didn't arrive** late every day.*
They can't speak English. → *I wish they **could** speak English.*

* 1 23.1 Listen and number the pictures.



* 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in bold.

- ▶ My bike is blue. I wish it **was** red.
- 1 I **speak** English. I wish I also _____ Chinese.
- 2 We **study** history. I wish we _____ geography.
- 3 I **know** the first answer. I wish I _____ the second one.
- 4 I **can** swim. I wish I _____ dive as well.
- 5 We **get** up early. I wish we _____ up later.
- 6 There **are** a lot of films on TV. I wish there _____ more documentaries.
- 7 I **sit** at the back of the class. I wish I _____ at the front.
- 8 You **can** hear my voice. I wish you _____ see my face.

* 3 Read the problems and complete the sentences using *I wish*.

- ▶ The book is on the top shelf and I can't reach it.
I wish I was _____ taller.
- 1 That magazine costs £5. It's too expensive for me.
 _____ less.
- 2 I can't carry this box. It's too heavy.
 _____ stronger.
- 3 I'd like to sing well but I can't.
 _____ better.
- 4 It's raining and I'm getting wet.
 _____ an umbrella.
- 5 We live in London. It's too big and too noisy for me.
 _____ in London.
- 6 My best friend goes to a different school.
 _____ to my school.
- 7 I don't understand him. He's speaking German.
 _____ German.
- 8 I have to walk to school but it's a long way.
 _____ walk to school.

* 4 Write some wishes for yourself. Use the ideas below or your own ideas.

get up later live in (town/country)
 speak (language) get less homework
 can draw can play the piano

I wish + would

We use **I wish + would/wouldn't** when we want a person to do something differently. We often use it to complain or when we are angry.

Sam sends me a lot of emails. It's very annoying. → I wish Sam would send me fewer emails.

My brother doesn't do the washing-up. It makes me angry.

→ I wish my brother would do the washing-up.

I wish he wouldn't watch TV all evening.

We can also use it when we want something different to happen in the future.

I wish it would stop raining.

I wish the train would arrive.

We don't use **I wish + would** to talk about ourselves.

I wish I would sit next to Katie. → I wish I sat next to Katie.

* 5 23.2 Listen and number the pictures.



* 6 23.2 Write about the pictures in exercise 5 using the verbs below. Listen again and check.

answer arrive explain open sing tidy

- I wish he'd tidy his bedroom.*
- _____ in the shower.
- _____ it again.
- _____.
- _____ the curtains.
- _____ her phone.

** 7 Read the situations and complete the complaint.

- ▶ They're late. I'm waiting for them.
I wish they would hurry up. (hurry)
- 1 She always asks me and I don't know the answer.
I wish she _____. (not ask)
- 2 There is a lot of litter in the street.
I wish people _____. (not drop)
- 3 They're talking. I can't hear the film.
I wish they _____. (be quiet)
- 4 I'm cooking for ten people. You're doing nothing.
I wish you _____. (help)
- 5 It's very hot. The window is closed.
I wish someone _____. (open)
- 6 You argued with him. He hasn't phoned you.
I wish he _____. (phone)
- 7 The shop assistant isn't very friendly.
I wish she _____. (smile)
- 8 You're quite thin. You don't eat much.
I wish you _____. (eat)

** 8 GAME Play in groups of three. Take turns to choose a situation from page 171. The second student makes a complaint and the third student decides if the complaint is correct.

** 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form (would or past simple) of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ I wish people wouldn't smoke on the bus. (not smoke)
- 1 I wish the weather _____ nicer. (be)
- 2 I wish you _____ up. We're late. (hurry)
- 3 I wish he _____ his bike. It's dirty. (clean)
- 4 I wish I _____ go to the cinema more often. (can)
- 5 I wish I _____ glasses. I don't like them. (not wear)
- 6 I wish you _____ with your sister. It's annoying. (not argue)

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			

Reading and writing

1 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ If I get up late, I normally ___ breakfast.
A don't eat **B** won't eat C wouldn't eat
- 1 If she was tired, she ___ to bed.
A went B will go C would go
- 2 I wish I ___ the answer.
A know B knew C would know
- 3 If we find your wallet, we ___ you.
A phone B will phone C would phone
- 4 I'd be very unhappy if they ___ me.
A don't invite B didn't invite C wouldn't invite
- 5 You won't win if you ___ try harder.
A don't B won't C wouldn't
- 6 I wish he ___ the window. It's cold in here.
A closed B will close C would close

2 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ If it rains, c
A I'd get wet.
B he needed an umbrella.
C I'll go to Jane's house.
- 1 We'll be late ___
A if you don't hurry.
B if the train didn't come.
C if we won't take a taxi.
- 2 I wish I ___
A spoke Chinese.
B wouldn't feel ill.
C will be taller.
- 3 If my sister cooked dinner, ___
A I'll tidy the living room.
B it tasted nice.
C I'd do the washing-up.
- 4 I would like school more ___
A if we don't wear school uniform.
B if we played sport every day.
C if lessons would start later.
- 5 If Max helps us tomorrow, ___
A we'll finish the job quickly.
B it is much easier.
C I'd pay him some money.

3 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- ▶ My mum hasn't got a car, so she doesn't drive to work.
If my mum had a car, she would drive to work.
- 1 I can never go abroad on holiday, but I'd like to.
I wish _____ abroad on holiday.
- 2 You don't get up early enough, so you always miss the bus.
If you got up earlier, you _____ the bus.
- 3 I think it's going to rain, so we probably won't play tennis.
If it _____, we won't play tennis.
- 4 He always shouts. I don't like it.
I wish he _____.
- 5 This book is boring, so I'm going to watch TV.
If the book _____ boring, I wouldn't watch TV.
- 6 I may go shopping and buy a new bag.
If I go shopping, I _____ a new bag.

4 Read the email from a friend. Then write a reply about your plans for the weekend.

Hi Jim

I'm looking forward to the weekend. We're going to Bournemouth and I think the weather will be good. If it's hot, we'll go to the beach and play cricket. But there are lots of shops there, so if the weather is bad, we'll go shopping. I wish you could come too!

See you soon.

Sam

5 Match the beginnings 1–10 and endings a–j of the sentences below.

- 1 If I tidied my room every week c
- 2 My teacher will help ____
- 3 If I found some money ____
- 4 I wish my friend ____
- 5 I wish I ____
- 6 I wouldn't argue ____
- 7 If I practised every morning ____
- 8 I'll forget ____
- 9 If I got top marks ____
- 10 I need to save up my money ____

- a wouldn't text me so late at night.
- b if I talk to her about it.
- c I'd get more pocket money.
- d I'd take it to the teacher.
- e didn't have to do my homework.
- f if I were you.
- g if I want to get a new bike.
- h I would be a better player.
- i my parents would give me a present.
- j if I don't write it down.

6 Now write different endings to the sentence beginnings in exercise 5. Make conditional sentences.

- 1 If I tidied my room every week I would be able to find things.
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____
- 9 _____
- 10 _____

Listening

7 R6.1 Listen and match 1–6 with the sentence endings A–H. You don't need to use all the endings.



- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------|
| A I'll give them to you tomorrow. | _____ |
| B you'd phone me. | _____ |
| C we won't go to the beach. | <u>1</u> |
| D they'd go to the beach every day. | _____ |
| E if she gets a new job. | _____ |
| F if it was cheaper. | _____ |
| G I'd work harder. | _____ |
| H you'll learn Spanish. | _____ |

Speaking

- 8** **Student B: turn to page 172.**
Student A: say an if clause using one of the situations in the box.
Student B: complete the sentence. Swap roles. Use first or second conditionals.

Situations
you feel ill tomorrow you can't sleep your parents don't cook a meal this evening your teacher doesn't give you any homework
Possible
play sport phone parents run to school read a book walk to school phone friends

If I felt ill tomorrow, ...

I'd stay at home.

If I feel ill tomorrow, ...

I'll stay at home.

24 Comparison: adjectives and adverbs

I can use comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs.

Comparative and superlative adjectives

We use the comparative adjective with **than** to compare two people or things.



Pete is **stronger** than Tim.

We use the superlative adjective with **the** when we compare three or more things.



But Max is **the strongest**.

We can use the comparative to compare two groups.
*Doctors are **richer than** nurses.*
*Paris is **more beautiful than** Manchester.*

With the superlative, we use **the** before the adjective.
*I've got three brothers. Mike is **the oldest**.*
*Yesterday was **the hottest** day of the year.*
*'The Simpsons' is **the most enjoyable** programme on TV.*

After the adjective, we use **in** before places or nouns for a group of people (e.g. *team, family*).

*It's **the tallest** building in my town.*
*Amy is **the most intelligent** person in the class.*

We use **of** before other nouns.
*It was **the funniest** film of the year.*

We can also use superlatives with the phrase **I've ever ...**
*This is **the most interesting** book I've ever read.*

See Reference page 175 for the spelling rules.

* 1 Write the comparative forms of the adjectives.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|-------------|-------|
| ▶ cheap | <u>Cheaper</u> | 7 difficult | _____ |
| 1 old | _____ | 8 hard | _____ |
| 2 hot | _____ | 9 healthy | _____ |
| 3 easy | _____ | 10 thin | _____ |
| 4 exciting | _____ | 11 bad | _____ |
| 5 late | _____ | 12 useful | _____ |
| 6 good | _____ | | |



* 2 Write the superlative forms of the adjectives.

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------------------|------------|-------|
| ▶ clean | <u>the cleanest</u> | 7 new | _____ |
| 1 big | _____ | 8 sad | _____ |
| 2 lucky | _____ | 9 bad | _____ |
| 3 popular | _____ | 10 special | _____ |
| 4 cold | _____ | 11 fresh | _____ |
| 5 noisy | _____ | 12 good | _____ |
| 6 boring | _____ | | |

3 Match 1–10 with a–j.

- 1 The burger is f
- 2 I think skiing is more ____
- 3 The computer is the most ____
- 4 I bought the ____
- 5 Is China the ____
- 6 Swimming is ____
- 7 It was the happiest day ____
- 8 The President is the most important person ____
- 9 Is America ____
- 10 My phone is more ____

- a better for your health than playing rugby.
- b cheapest T-shirt in the shop.
- c in my country.
- d modern than yours.
- e more expensive than Britain?
- f cheaper than the pizza.
- g of her life.
- h useful invention ever.
- i biggest country in the world?
- j dangerous than riding a horse.

4 24.1 Listen and complete the table with ✓, ✓✓ or ✓✓✓.

	Beth	Dora	Rosy
friendly	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓
good at sport			
intelligent			
shy			
popular			

5 24.2 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in brackets. Listen and check.

- ▶ My room is tidier than my brother's. (tidy)
 - ▶ Isabel has the tidiest desk in the office. (tidy)
- 1 I think this is _____ train in the world! (slow)
 - 2 Ed looks _____ Oscar. (thin)
 - 3 Football is _____ cricket. (exciting)
 - 4 Football is _____ sport in the world. (popular)
 - 5 This is _____ day of the year. (hot)
 - 6 I think we'll win. That team is _____ ours. (bad)

- 7 This is _____ village in the whole country. (pretty)
- 8 Mrs Symons is _____ teacher in the school. (good)
- 9 Taxis are _____ buses. (expensive)
- 10 Biology is _____ of all my subjects at school. (interesting)

6 Write the sentences.

- ▶ Jamie – funny – Henry
Jamie is funnier than Henry.
 - ▶ He – famous person – my town
He is the most famous person in my town.
- 1 Russia – big – Korea

 - 2 Russia – big country – the world

 - 3 A computer – useful – a phone

 - 4 Eiffel Tower – interesting building – Paris

 - 5 Your shoes – dirty – mine

 - 6 Lucy – good musician – orchestra

 - 7 Monday – bad day – the week

 - 8 Health – important – money

7 Work in pairs. Say an adjective from the box. Your partner uses it in a sentence about someone in his or her family.

confident friendly funny good at sport
intelligent old tall thin

Funny

My dad is the funniest person in my family.

Old

My brother is older than me.

Not as ... as .../less ... than

We use **not as ... as ...** to make negative comparisons.
Egypt isn't as big as China. (= China is bigger than Egypt.)
Tom isn't as tall as Jack. (= Jack is taller than Tom.)

We can also use **less ... than**.
Your room is less tidy than mine.
Playing sport is less important than studying.

We can also make a negative superlative with **the least**.
He was the least helpful assistant in the shop.

- 8** Look at the information about three computers. Then read the sentences and circle the correct options.

	GX7	AP3	BB9
Price	£499	£479	£525
How old?	3 months	6 months	1 year
How heavy?	0.95 kg	1.06 kg	0.78 kg
How thin?	9 mm	10 mm	8 mm
How fast?	1.33 GHz	1.00 GHz	0.77 GHz
How good?	*****	**	***

- ▶ The **AP3 / BB9** isn't as expensive as the GX7.
 1 The **GX7 / BB9** isn't as old as the AP3.
 2 The **AP3 / BB9** isn't as heavy as the GX7.
 3 The **AP3 / BB9** isn't as thin as the GX7.
 4 The **GX7 / BB9** isn't as fast as the AP3.
 5 The **AP3 / GX7** isn't as good as the BB9.
 6 The **AP3 / BB9** isn't as cheap as the GX7.
 7 The **GX7 / BB9** isn't as new as the AP3.
 8 The **AP3 / BB9** isn't as light as the GX7.

- 9** **GAME** Work in pairs. Choose a person in the picture, but don't tell your partner. Say two sentences using *not as ... as ...* and adjectives from the box. Can your partner guess the person?

tall short young old thin fat
 happy sad

This person isn't as tall as Daisy.
 Charlie isn't as happy as this person.

Is it Bella?



Andy



Bella



Charlie



Daisy



Ed



Gemma

- 10** **24.3** Look again at the people in exercise 9 and listen to the sentences. Write **Yes** if the sentence is correct, and **No** if it is not correct.

- ▶ Yes
 1 _____
 2 _____
 3 _____
 4 _____
 5 _____



***11** Rewrite the comparisons using *not as ... as ...* or *less ... than*.

- ▶ Angie is more popular than me.
I'm not as popular as Angie.
I'm less popular than Angie.
- 1 Jason is more handsome than Theo.

- 2 Supermarkets are more useful than cafés.

- 3 Tokyo is noisier than London.


- 4 I'm taller than my teacher.

- 5 The chair is more comfortable than the floor.

- 6 She's more beautiful than me.

- 7 Pasta is healthier than chips.

- 8 Your bag is more expensive than mine.

***12**  Look at the example. Write eight sentences using *not as ... as ...* and *less ... than* and the words in the table.

basketball	big boring dangerous difficult exciting expensive hot popular rich useful
football	
skiing	
swimming	
dentists	
footballers	
musicians	
nurses	
the Arctic	
India	
Britain	
Egypt	

Swimming isn't as exciting as basketball.

Nurses aren't as rich as footballers.

The Arctic is less popular than Egypt.

Comparison of adverbs

We make the comparative and superlative of most adverbs by adding **more** and **the most** before the adverb.

*Polly did her homework **more quickly than me**.*
*Kate spoke **the most confidently**.*

Some short adverbs have a comparative form with **-er** and **-est**, like adjectives. For example: **early, fast, hard, late, long, loud**.


*Paul arrived **earlier than me**.*
*The journey took **longer than normal**.*
*Toby ran **the fastest**.*

There are some irregular adverbs:

well	better	the best
badly	worse	the worst
little	less	the least

We can also use **not as ... as ...** with adverbs.

*I **didn't do as well as Jim** in the exam.*
*The book **doesn't explain it as clearly as our teacher**.*

***13**  **24.4** Write the words in the correct order. Listen and check.

▶ gets up/his brother/Henry/than/later
Henry gets up later than his brother.

- 1 swims/me/than/Emily/better

- 2 harder/her friends/works/than/Cathy

- 3 drive/carefully/You/more/should

- 4 more loudly/everyone else/Ryan/than/is talking

- 5 He/his parents/eats/than/healthily/more

- 6 than/my brother/less/earn/I

- 7 the bus/more slowly/this train/than/is going

- 8 you/please/more/speak/Could/clearly

***14** Complete the sentences with the correct comparative or superlative form of the adverb in brackets.

- ▶ She spoke more quietly than me. (quietly)
- ▶ I did the best in the whole school. (well)
- 1 We arrived _____ than everyone else. (late)
- 2 Jack didn't play as _____ as Tom. (well)
- 3 They've lived here _____ than us. (long)
- 4 Kim studies _____ in the whole class. (hard)
- 5 It's impossible to live _____. (cheaply)
- 6 The match doesn't start as _____ as usual. (early)
- 7 You should read the letter _____. (carefully)
- 8 Fred and Alex are lazy, but Pete works _____ of all. (little)
- 9 Eat _____, or you'll feel sick. (slowly)
- 10 No one in the band is very good but he definitely sings _____. (badly)

***15** **GAME** Student A mimes an action. Student B guesses the action. Then student A chooses an adverb and mimes the action and the adverb. Student B guesses the adverb.

You're playing the guitar.

Yes.

Now you're playing it faster!

climb the stairs
eat some chips
make coffee
play the guitar
send a text message
sit down
walk
write a letter

angrily
badly
carefully
fast
slowly
strangely



***16** Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ That was **the boringest** film I've ever seen.
the most boring
- 1 Your computer is **faster of** mine.

- 2 Beth is **the more wonderful** person I know.

- 3 Vicky has got **more longer hair than** me.

- 4 That was one of **the sadest moments of** my life.

- 5 William isn't **as clever than** he thinks.

- 6 Leo can run **more fastly than** anyone else.

- 7 Who is **most popular person in** your class?

- 8 Some footballers are **famouser than** musicians.

- 9 The Taj Mahal is perhaps **the most beautiful building of** the world.

- 10 You need to listen **more careful**.

- 11 That is **the dirtier** car I've ever seen.

- 12 This week's test was **more difficult that** I expected.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			

25 Position: adjectives and adverbs

I can use adjectives and adverbs in the correct position; I can use *too* and *enough*.

Position of adjectives



We put adjectives before a noun.

*She's got **dark** hair.*

*He works in a **modern** factory.*

***Happy** people live longer.*

We can put adjectives after the verb **be** and verbs like **become**, **feel**, **look**, **seem**.

*I'm very **excited**.*

*You **look tired**.*

In questions with the verb **be**, we put the adjective after the noun.

*Is your bedroom **big**?*

When an adjective comes after an indefinite article (**a/an**), we use **an** if the adjective starts with a vowel.

*a car **an** old car a red car*

When we use two or more adjectives to describe a noun, we usually put them in the order in the table below.

*He's just bought a **small blue** car.*

*She was wearing an **old woollen** sweater.*

*I saw a **beautiful Chinese** vase in the museum.*

When we use two adjectives after the verb **be**, we use **and** between the adjectives.

*His car was **small and blue**.*

Opinion	Size	Age	Colour	Nationality	Material
beautiful horrible	big small	old new	blue red	Chinese Russian	cotton plastic

* 1 Write the sentences.


- ▶ live/in/town/I/boring/a
- 1 are/my/parents/friendly/very
- 2 a/you're/jacket/wearing/new
- 3 a/she/got/job/good/has/?
- 4 that/interesting/is/book/?
- 5 ate/restaurant/in/we/Chinese/a
- 6 angry/man/looks/that
- 7 your/difficult/lessons/English /are/?
- 8 cars/usually/drive/people/famous/expensive

I live in a boring town.

- * 2 Write the adjectives from the box in the correct place in the table.

Opinion	Size	Age	Colour	Nationality	Material
beautiful					

brown purple long green old beautiful
 new modern small Russian nice ancient boring
 big plastic silk friendly Egyptian British
 woollen unpleasant large Turkish cotton
 enormous grey tiny tall glass interesting
 young stone blue

- * 3  25.1 Listen and complete the dialogue with the adjectives from the box.

beautiful blue boring chocolate creamy
 delicious enormous interesting Indian
 Italian little modern new new nice
 old red silk stone

Claire: I was at Giorgio's last night.
Jenny: Is that the new Italian restaurant? How was the food?
Claire: Not bad. I had a bowl of pasta with a ¹ _____ sauce, and an ² _____ cake.
Jenny: Sounds nice.
Claire: And I met some ³ _____ people too – the O'Sullivan's. They're a really ⁴ _____ family. The daughter, Katy, is my age. She's lovely. She was wearing a ⁵ _____ dress.
Jenny: What are they doing here?
Claire: Her dad is an architect. He's designing a ⁶ _____ office block in London, I think. But they're also restoring an ⁷ _____ house in the village.
Jenny: I know that. There's a ⁸ _____ sports car outside.
Claire: Yes. That's her mum's car.

- * 4 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in brackets. 

- ▶ They served the food on old china plates. (china/old)
 1 I saw a _____ film yesterday. (fantastic/French)
 2 You play golf with a _____ ball. (small/white)
 3 He was wearing a _____ shirt. (cotton/white)
 4 I'd like some _____ shoes. (black/leather)
 5 Julia had _____ hair. (long/red)
 6 The meeting was full of _____ students. (Korean/young)
 7 I keep them in a _____ box. (plastic/yellow)
 8 There's a _____ shopping centre in our town. (huge/new)
 9 He's become an _____ man. (angry/old)
 10 He was the singer in a _____ band. (American/famous)

5



Write sentences about yourself and your family and friends, using the adjectives in the box or your own ideas. Use two adjectives with each noun.

beautiful big boring cotton huge
interesting leather modern new nice
old plastic small wooden lovely

I like old American films.
My dad often wears a black leather jacket.
We live in a small modern house.

Position of adverbs

We use adverbs of frequency and some other adverbs before the verb – but after the verb **be**.

I **always** take the bus to school.
Mary **definitely** likes this school.
My teachers **are never** late.

Frequency	always, ever, never, often, sometimes, usually
Certainty	certainly, definitely, probably

When we use an auxiliary or modal verb, we put these adverbs between the auxiliary or modal and the main verb.

I've **just** played cricket.
We'll **probably** finish tomorrow.
Do you **normally** wait for Jenny?
You **must never** say that again.

Note: we put **certainly, definitely, probably** before a negative auxiliary.

I **definitely** didn't understand that.

We put adverbs of manner (**dangerously, fast, well**) after the verb or after the object.

She can ski **well**.
Ann **explained** the problem **clearly**.
Ann **explained** **clearly** the problem.

• We often use adverbs of time (**yesterday, soon**) or place (**here, there**) at the end of a sentence.

Sue visited her grandparents **yesterday**.
She has finished her homework **already**.
Do you play tennis **often**?
You can buy some interesting things **here**.

6 25.2 Circle the correct option. Listen and check.

- ▶ We **never play** / play never tennis.
- You're **hungry always** / always hungry.
 - Do you **come often** / often come here?
 - She **certainly works** / works **certainly** hard.
 - Have you **already** / **already you** finished?
 - It's the first time I've **ever been** / **been ever** on a plane.
 - My brother **borrowes sometimes** / **sometimes borrowes** my bike without asking me.
 - It **probably won't** / **won't probably** rain tomorrow.
 - You **should always** / **always should** clean your teeth in the morning.

7 Write the sentences.

- ▶ drove/fast/he
He drove fast.
- early/they/arrived

 - well/play/I/didn't

 - can't/my bag/I/anywhere/find

 - you/did/yesterday/where/go?
_____?
 - your brother/see/there/didn't/I

 - confidently/the question/answered/she

 - is going/soon/the film/to start

 - you/your/left/outside/shoes

8 Ask your partner the questions below. Use the adverbs in the box.

definitely ever often sometimes yet

Is it the end of the lesson?
Do you clean your room?
Have you swum in the sea?
Are you sixteen?
Will you become rich?

Is it the end of the lesson yet?

No, it isn't.

9 Circle the correct options to complete the text.

I had an exciting day yesterday / probably. I went to a theme park with my friends. It was the first time we'd been ¹ever / there.

I wanted to go on lots of rides, so we arrived ²just / early. The best ride was called 'Stealth'. It travelled very, very fast. It was the scariest thing I've ³ever / yesterday done! On the way back, we ⁴almost / there missed the train and we got home ⁵late / just.

I'm tired today, but it was ⁶definitely / yesterday a brilliant day out!



10 Write the sentences using the adverbs in brackets.

- ▶ She's spoken to the doctor. (already)
She's already spoken to the doctor.
- 1 Tony will pass the exam. (definitely)

- 2 It is four o'clock. (already)

- 3 What are they doing? (there)

- 4 She said 'thank you'. (nicely)

- 5 Are they coming? (definitely)

- 6 We've been shopping. It was fun. (just)


- 7 I lost my wallet. (last week)

11 **25.3** Listen to the dialogue. Are the sentences correct ✓ or incorrect x?

- ▶ Jack has finished his maths homework. ✓
- 1 Maths is never difficult for Jack. _____
- 2 Jack sometimes goes to basketball matches. _____
- 3 There is a basketball match tomorrow. _____
- 4 Jack agrees to go to the match. _____
- 5 Jack has eaten dinner. _____
- 6 Jack will call Ben later. _____

12 **GAME** Work in groups. Are the sentences correct ✓ or incorrect x? Correct the five incorrect sentences. You have five minutes. Swap answers with another group and go to page 171 to check their answers. Give one point for a correct ✓ or x, and one point for a correct change.

- 1 He's got an old French dictionary.
- 2 Everyone spoke quietly.
- 3 Has she got dark hair?
- 4 What time does normally school end?
- 5 Is your good school?
- 6 It was the first time she'd ever caught a fish.
- 7 Do you always boil vegetables?
- 8 We'll tomorrow learn those new words.
- 9 He was carrying a black big bag.

13  Read the text in exercise 9 again and write about your interesting day out. Where did you go? What did you do? Was it good? Use adverbs and write about 80 words.

I had fantastic day out yesterday.



Too and enough

We use **too** + adjective or adverb to say something is more ... than we want.



The basket is **too high**.
(= The basket is higher than we want.)

We use **not** + adjective or adverb + **enough** to say that something is less ... than we want.
We use **enough** after the adjective or adverb.



The basket **isn't high enough**. (= It is less high than we want.)

We use an adjective or adverb + **enough** to say that something is as we want it.



The basket is **high enough now**. (= This is the right height.)

Too and **not ... enough** are often opposites.
*This bag is **too big**. I can't carry it.*
*This bag **isn't big enough**. I can't fit all my books in it.*

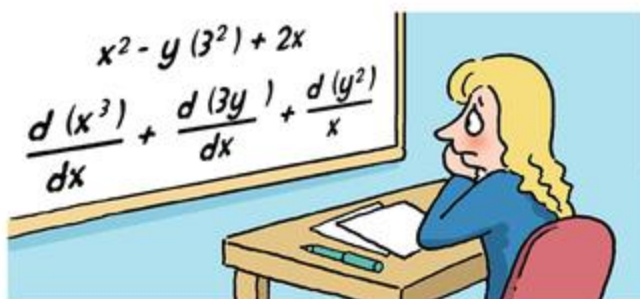
We can use **too** and **enough** with the infinitive form.
*He was **too tired** to play football.*
*I wasn't **old enough** to see that film.*

14 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **too** and an adjective from the box.

difficult expensive high hot loud tired



► That's too high !



1 This is _____ !



2 That's _____ !



3 This is _____ !



4 I'm _____ !



5 This is _____ !

15 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ Slow down. You're driving **fast enough / too fast!**
- 'Are we **late enough / too late?**' 'No. We're OK. It's still open.'
 - You can wear my jacket. I'm sure it's **big enough / too big.**
 - I'm not **hungry enough / too hungry** to eat all that.
 - It's **noisy enough / too noisy.** I can't hear you.
 - We couldn't go swimming. It was **cold enough / too cold.**
 - I'm not **rich enough / too rich** to buy a big car.
 - You're walking **slowly enough / too slowly.** We'll be late.
 - She spoke **clearly enough / too clearly,** so everyone could understand.

16 Complete the sentences using *not enough*.

- ▶ I'm sorry. Your essay is too short. Your essay isn't long enough.
- This computer is too slow. This computer _____.
 - That homework was too easy. That homework _____.
 - You can't wear those shoes. They're too dirty. Your shoes _____.
 - I can't sit on this sofa. It's too uncomfortable. This sofa _____.
 - I can't afford that bag. It's too expensive. That bag _____ enough.
 - You shouldn't eat that food. It's too unhealthy. That food _____.
 - My dad can't play football any more. he's too old. My dad _____ to play football.
 - I don't like this coffee. It's too weak. This coffee _____.

17 **25.4** Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence, using *too* or *enough*. Listen and check.

- ▶ Frank isn't very strong. He can't carry that box.
Frank isn't strong enough to carry that box.
- Toby is lazy. He never cleans his room.

 - They're not very old. They can't go swimming alone.

 - We weren't very tired. We didn't fall asleep.

 - He's very famous. He doesn't travel by bus.

 - She's rather shy. She couldn't be a teacher.

 - We didn't play very well. We didn't win.

18 **25.5** Listen to Linda complaining to the receptionist about her hotel. Then complete her online review of the hotel with *too ... or not ... enough* and an adjective.

Hotel Deluxe ★★★★★

We stayed there last week. It was terrible. First of all, the room ▶ was not clean enough. Secondly, the bathroom was ¹ _____ and the water was ² _____. Next, there was the bed: it wasn't ³ _____ and the sheets were ⁴ _____. Then, the window was ⁵ _____; I couldn't reach it. Finally, the people next door were ⁶ _____; so I couldn't get to sleep. I would definitely not recommend this hotel.

19 **GAME** Work in a group of four. Write the adjectives from the box on pieces of paper. Take turns to pick a piece of paper and make a complaint about a restaurant using that adjective. Score one point for every correct sentence.

big clean cold dirty expensive hot noisy polite quiet rude slow small

The food wasn't hot enough.

The waiter was too slow.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			

Reading and writing

1 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ Cathy plays basketball better B football.
A of B than C that
- 1 She has ___ watched a match on TV.
A always B just C today
- 2 She doesn't go to matches at the stadium because they're ___ expensive.
A enough B less C too
- 3 A ___ player has just joined the team.
A Chinese young B young and Chinese
C young Chinese
- 4 He's ___ player on the team.
A tallest B the taller C the tallest
- 5 Her team weren't ___ to win today.
A good enough B as good as C too good
- 6 She thinks they will play ___ next week.
A better B more well C weller

2 Jess wants to buy a second-hand television. Read her notice and the three advertisements. Then complete the sentences with the correct names.

60cm Television Wanted
Less than two years old
under £200
email Jess

For Sale	TV For Sale	For Sale
52cm TV.	80cm TV.	TV. 60cm.
Almost new.	Five years old.	Three years old.
£250	£180	£160
email Tim	email Sue	email Ben

- ▶ Sue's TV is older than Ben's.
- 1 _____'s TV is too expensive for Jess.
- 2 _____'s TV isn't as big as Ben's.
- 3 _____'s TV is the least expensive.
- 4 _____'s TV isn't big enough for Jess.
- 5 _____'s TV is newer than Ben's.
- 6 _____'s TV is the smallest.
- 7 _____'s TV isn't new enough for Jess.
- 8 _____'s TV is less expensive than Sue's.

3 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the words in brackets.

- ▶ Your computer is less noisy than mine. (noisy)
My computer is noisier than yours.
- 1 Helen is younger than Daisy. (as old)
Helen _____ Daisy.
- 2 I'm sure he's French. (definitely)
He _____ French.
- 3 These trainers are not cheap enough. (expensive)
These trainers _____.
- 4 She is more intelligent than the other students in her class. (intelligent)
She is _____ student in her class.
- 5 She walks to school every day. (always)
She _____.
- 6 She's wearing a blue dress. It's beautiful. (beautiful)
She's wearing a _____ dress.

4 Read the email from your pen friend, and then write a reply.

Hi John

I'm sending you a photo of my family. My dad is quite tall, but my mum is really small. I'm taller than my dad now, so I'm the tallest in the family. My brother is the youngest in the family. He isn't old enough to go to school yet.

Please write soon and tell me about your family.

Listening

5 **R7.1** Listen. Choose the correct picture A, B or C.



A



B



C



1 A



B



C



2 A



B



C



3 A



B



C



4 A



B



C



5 A



B



C

6 **R7.2** You will hear a conversation at the food market. Choose **yes** if the sentence is correct, and **no** if it is incorrect.

▶ The red apples are bigger than the green ones.

Yes

1 Apricots are cheaper than peaches. _____

2 Apricots are too expensive. _____

3 Strawberries aren't sweet enough. _____

4 The large tomatoes aren't as expensive as the small tomatoes. _____

5 The large tomatoes look older than the small ones. _____

6 She can't buy any more fruit because she hasn't got enough money. _____

Speaking

7 Work in pairs. Take turns to ask questions and answer with full sentences.

Student A: ask the questions in box A.

Student B: ask the questions in box B.

A

Who is the oldest person in your class?

Are you as tall as your mum?

How often do you go to the cinema?

Have you got any new blue clothes?

Are you fit enough to run 1 km?

Is my hair longer than yours?

B

Who is the tallest person in your family?

Are you older than me?

How often do you play sport?

Have you got a small black bag?

Are you hungry enough to eat some food now?

Is today as hot as yesterday?

Who is the oldest person in your class?

Jim is the oldest person in my class.

Who is the tallest person in your family?

My uncle is the tallest person in my family.

26 Prepositions of time

I can use prepositions of time.

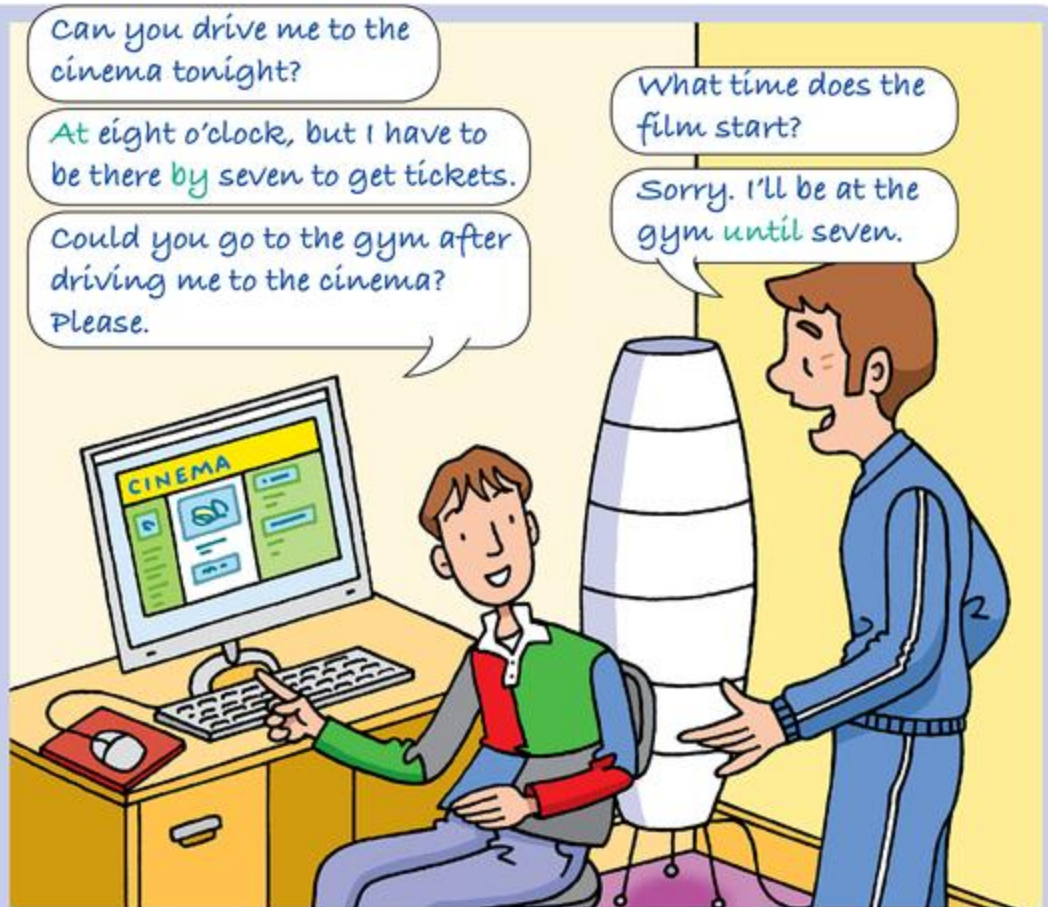
At, in, on

We often use **at**, **on** or **in** to talk about when we do something.

At	
clock time	at six o'clock at midday
meal time	at lunch time at dinner time
festival	at New Year
two exceptions	at the weekend at night

On	
day	on Tuesday on your birthday
date	on the 14th of May
part of a named day	on Thursday morning

In (+ period of time)	
month	in July
year	in 2012
part of a day	in the morning
season	in the summer



We use **in** with **morning**, **afternoon** and **evening**, but **at** with **night**.
*Will you be here **in** the afternoon?*
*I don't go out **at** night.*

If we talk about a particular day we always use **on**.
*What do you do **on** Saturday mornings?*
*We stayed at home **on** Friday night.*

We do not use a preposition before **last**, **next** or **this**.
*I saw them **last** night.*
*They're coming **next** week.*
*We've got history **this** afternoon.*

We can use **in** + a period of time to say when something will happen in the future.
*You'll feel better **in** a few days.*
*We're going to leave school **in** two years.*

* 1 Complete the expressions with *at*, *on* or *in*.



▶ *at* half past three

1 _____ Sunday

2 _____ 2001

3 _____ the weekend

4 _____ September

5 _____ 1 September

6 _____ the morning

7 _____ night


8 _____ Friday afternoon

9 _____ the winter

10 _____ quarter to seven

****2** Tick ✓ the correct answer.

- ▶ They arrived at ____.
Tuesday six o'clock the morning
- 1 Ronny was born on ____.
24 November the summer August
- 2 In England, winter starts in ____.
1 December New Year November
- 3 What are you doing at ____?
Saturday the weekend
the summer
- 4 Carla agreed to help us on ____.
Wednesday next week
the evening
- 5 He got married in ____.
12 February 1978 3 a.m. 2002
- 6 The streets are very quiet at ____.
Sunday mornings night
the morning
- 7 I have to look after my little brother on ____.
Thursday evening this evening
the evening
- 8 I like going for long walks in ____.
the winter the weekend Sundays
- 9 Pete decided to do no homework on ____.
his birthday New Year the summer
- 10 The shop is going to close in ____.
Saturday 5.30 p.m. two weeks

****3**  **26.1** Listen to Charlie talking to his dad about his football tour. Answer the questions using *in*, *on* or *at*.

- ▶ Which month is the tour going to happen?
In November.
- 1 What date does the tour start?

- 2 When is the first match?

- 3 They are going to look around the city on the Tuesday. What part of day will they be there?

- 4 What time do they leave school on Monday?

- 5 What time does the coach leave Bristol on Wednesday?

- 6 What date does Charlie arrive home?

****4** Write sentences with *going to*.


- ▶ What/you do/July?
What are you going to do in July?
- 1 Gemma/meet/me/midday

- 2 Tom/play football/his birthday

- 3 Bella and Emily/make a cake/the afternoon

- 4 I/not do/any homework/Friday evening

- 5 Where/you stay/next week?

****5**  Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the three question types in the examples. Use the words in the box or your own ideas.

do maths homework eat a cake get up
go on holiday have dinner cook something
play sport send a text message sing
tidy your room use the internet watch TV

What time do you usually get up?


I get up at seven o'clock.

When did you last watch TV?

I watched TV last night.

When are you going to have dinner?

I'll probably have dinner at eight o'clock.

****6**  **GAME** Write six answers from exercise 5. Write ✓ if the sentence is true, or ✗ if the sentence is not true. Work in a group of three. Student A: read student B's sentences. Student C: guess which sentences are true. Then swap roles.

I cooked dinner on Wednesday.

I went to Spain in January.

I'm going to play football at three o'clock this afternoon.

I think sentence 2 is false.
You didn't go to Spain in January.

After, before, during, for

We also use **after**, **before** and **during** to say when something happened.



I sent a text message to my mum **before the lesson**.
My phone rang **during the lesson** and the teacher took it from me.
The teacher gave me back my phone **after the lesson**.

We use **for** to say how long something lasts.
We studied English **for an hour**.

*7 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **after**, **before** or **during**.



- ▶ Anna charged her mobile phone before the holiday.
- 1 Anna's dad swam a lot _____ the holiday.
- 2 Anna's mum uploaded photos _____ the holiday.
- 3 Anna read a lot of books _____ the holiday.
- 4 Anna's mum ironed her clothes _____ the holiday.
- 5 _____ the holiday, Anna's dad unpacked the suitcases.
- 6 Anna phoned her friends _____ the holiday.
- 7 Anna's mum took lots of photos _____ the holiday.
- 8 Anna's dad read a guidebook _____ the holiday.

*8 Write six sentences about an interesting holiday you had. Use **after**, **before** or **during**.

I bought some sunglasses before the holiday.

*9 26.2 Complete the sentences with **during** or **for**. Then listen and check.

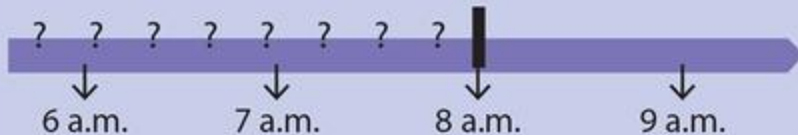
- ▶ We stayed in Paris for three days.
- ▶ We visited the Eiffel Tower during our stay.
- 1 George fell asleep _____ his science lesson.
- 2 Mandy slept _____ two hours.
- 3 Kate has been at this school _____ three years.
- 4 We can talk about it _____ lunch.
- 5 You'll have to wait here _____ half an hour.
- 6 A loud noise woke them up _____ the night.
- 7 The microphone stopped working _____ the concert.
- 8 We're going to camp here _____ a week.

*10 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ I've known Peter **for** / **in** eight years.
- 1 The film will start **for** / **in** fifteen minutes.
- 2 It was a long match. They played **for** / **in** three hours.
- 3 You should sleep **for** / **in** eight hours every night.
- 4 It's two o'clock. They're arriving **for** / **in** half an hour.
- 5 'How long will you stay in London?' '**For** / **In** three years.'
- 6 We stayed in the hotel **for** / **in** a week.
- 7 'When do the holidays end?' '**For** / **In** three weeks.'
- 8 Dinner's nearly ready. We're going to eat **for** / **in** five minutes.

By, from ... until

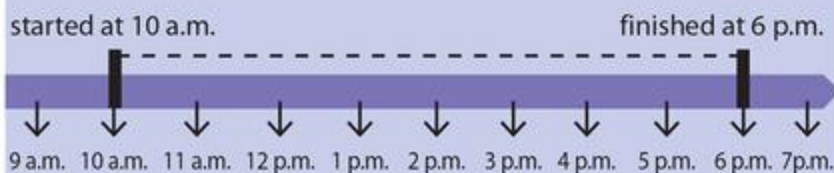
We use **by** to mean 'not later than'.



You must arrive **by eight o'clock**. (= some time before 8 o'clock)

Can you phone me **by four o'clock**?

We use **until** to say when a continuing action finishes. We can also say **till**.



I studied **from ten in the morning until six in the evening**.

We stayed at Tim's house **till eight o'clock**.

Can you work **until four o'clock**?

*11 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ You should arrive **by** / **until** ten o'clock.
- 1 The shops are open from 10 a.m. **by** / **until** 7 p.m.
- 2 Please can you post this letter **by** / **until** Monday?
- 3 You must get home **by** / **until** nine o'clock.
- 4 We lived in London **by** / **until** 2010.
- 5 Max has to decide about the job **by** / **until** Friday.
- 6 They stayed **by** / **until** midnight!
- 7 It rained **by** / **until** midday and then it was sunny.
- 8 You'll have to get up **by** / **until** seven o'clock to catch the train.

*12 Complete the sentences using **by** or **until**.

- ▶ They will arrive at seven. The house must be tidy. You must tidy the house by seven.
- ▶ They arrived at six and stayed for three hours. They stayed until nine.
- 1 The museum opens at nine and closes at five. It is open from nine _____.
- 2 You must pack your bags. We're leaving at six. You must pack your bags _____.
- 3 Can you wait? I'll be back at three. Can you wait _____?
- 4 We start maths at two. It lasts an hour. We do maths _____.
- 5 It's Monday today. We need your reply in three days. We need your reply _____.
- 6 Ryan has some French homework. The teacher wants it on Monday. Ryan has to finish his homework _____.

*13 26.3 Complete the biography with the prepositions in the box. Listen and check.

after by during in for on until



Pelé was born on the 23rd of October 1940 in Brazil. He is often called the greatest footballer of all time. ¹_____ 1956, at the age of only fifteen, he joined the Santos Football Club and stayed with the team ²_____ 1974.

³_____ the time Pelé was sixteen, he had also started playing for the Brazilian national team and ⁴_____ 1958 he won the World Cup for the first time. In total, he played for Brazil ⁵_____ fourteen years and ⁶_____ that time, Brazil won the World Cup three times.

⁷_____ eighteen years at Santos, Pelé left Brazil and ended his career in America. He played his last match ever ⁸_____ the 1st of October 1977. ⁹_____ his whole career, 'The King of Football' amazingly scored 697 goals in 753 matches.

*14



Now write a biography of someone famous. Include information about dates and times.

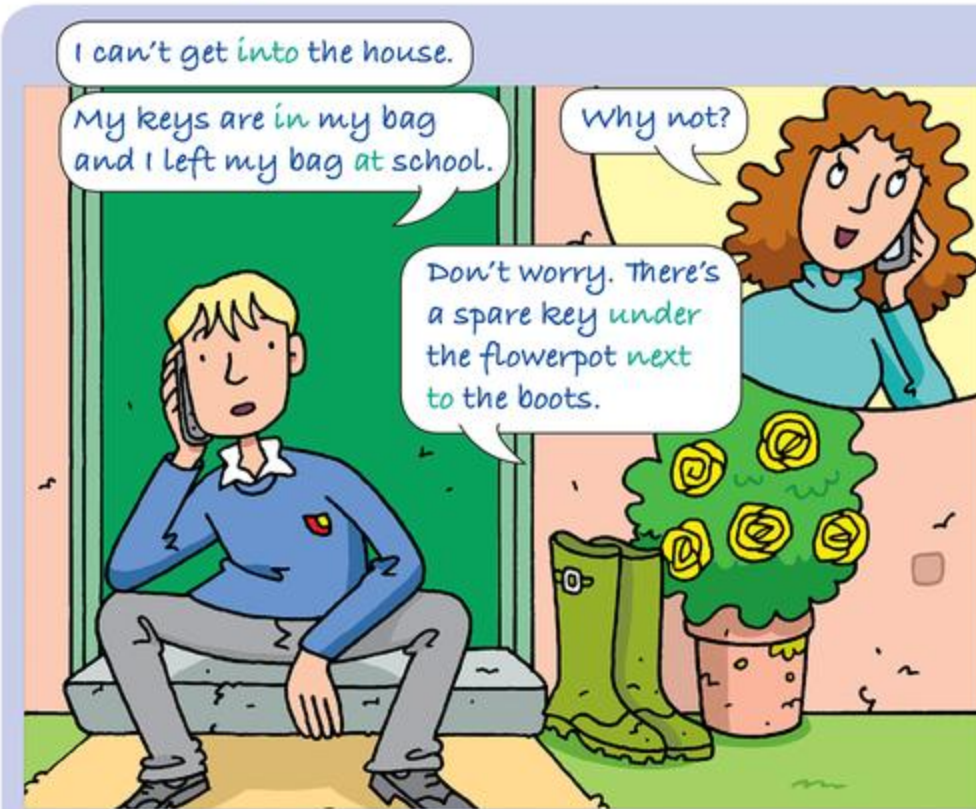
Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			

27 Prepositions of place and movement

I can use prepositions of place and movement.

In, at, on + place



In:	a box, a room, a town, a country, a photo, a picture, a car, bed, hospital
On:	the floor, a table, the roof, the wall, a shelf, a road/street, a bus, a train, a plane, the TV, the internet
At:	a bus stop, a station, a door, a cinema, a restaurant, home, a concert, a football match, a party, school, work, the top, the bottom, the end

We often use **at** with places where an event happens.

*We met **at the cinema**.*

But we can use **in** with the same word when we mean inside the building itself.

*It was dark **in the cinema**.*

We use **in** with towns.

*We live **in Oxford**.*

But we use **at** when we talk about a stop on a journey.

*The train stopped **at Oxford**.*

We use **on** with public transport.

*I'm **on the bus**. We're **on the train**.*

But we use **in** with cars.

*I'm sitting **in the car**.*

We use **at** with **the bottom, the top, the end**.

*My phone was **at the bottom** of my bag.*

*I started writing **at the top** of the page.*

*Put a full stop **at the end** of the sentence.*

* 1 27.1 Circle the correct option. Listen and check.

- ▶ They live **at / in** a nice town.
- 1 You'll find the book **in / on** the shelf.
- 2 They waited **at / on** the station for two hours.
- 3 We've moved to a house **at / on** Preston Street.
- 4 Is everyone **in / on** the car? OK. Let's go.
- 5 I'll see you **at / in** the football match tomorrow.
- 6 He dropped his wallet **in / on** the ground.
- 7 Is Gemma still **in / on** bed?
- 8 Who's that **in / on** the photo?
- 9 Can we see a film **at / in** the cinema this week?
- 10 'I can't find the keys.' 'They're **at / in** the bottom of my bag.'



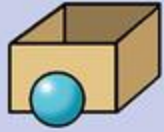
* 2 Write answers to the questions using the words in the box and the correct preposition.

apartment bed bus stop cinema fridge
handbag River Street wall work

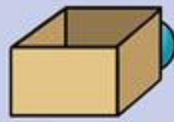
- ▶ Where does Kim live? in an apartment
- 1 Where does she keep her purse? _____
- 2 Where does she catch the bus? _____
- 3 Where does she watch films? _____
- 4 Where does she put her pictures? _____
- 5 Where is her apartment? _____
- 6 Where does she sleep? _____
- 7 Where does she put milk? _____
- 8 Where is she from 9 a.m. until 5 p.m.? _____

Prepositions of place

We also use the following prepositions to talk about place.



The ball is **in front of** the box.



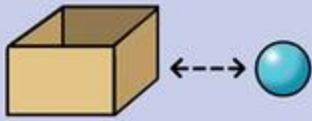
The ball is **behind** the box.



The ball is **next to** the box.



The ball is **between** the boxes.



The ball is **opposite** the box.



The balls are **inside** the box.



The ball is **under** the box.



The balls are **outside** the box.

We only use **inside** when someone or something is in an enclosed space, like a building or box. We can use **in** to talk about all places.

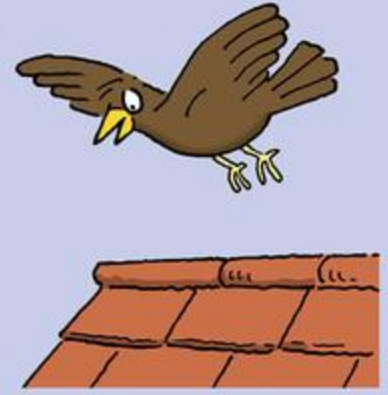
*There's a bird **in/inside** the house.*

*The key is **in** the door.*

We use **on top of** when something is in contact with a three-dimensional object. We use **on** for two-dimensional surfaces. We use **above** when there is no contact.



*There is a bird **on top of** the house.*



*There is a bird **above** the house. (= It is flying.)*

* 3 Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with prepositions from the box.

above behind between in front of inside
next to next to on top of opposite
outside under

▶ The café is next to the bank.

1 Dora's bag is _____ her chair.

2 The bank is _____ the café and the hairdresser's.

3 Dora and Sue are sitting _____ the café.

4 The supermarket is _____ the post office.

5 There is a bus stop _____ the supermarket.

6 There is a cat _____ the car.

7 The post office is _____ the hairdresser's.

8 There is a waiter _____ the café.

9 Max is cleaning the window _____ the post office.

10 Sam is parking his motorbike _____ the car.



* 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the picture.

Where is the hairdresser's?

Next to the bank.

* 5 Write a description of your classroom. Use all the prepositions in exercise 3.

There are thirty people **inside** the room.
I'm sitting **behind** vicky....

Prepositions of movement

We use the following prepositions to talk about movement.



He walked **to** the office **from** his house.



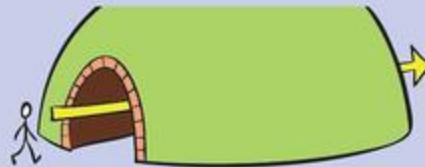
He got **off** the bus.



He climbed **down** the ladder.



He went **into** the house.



He went **through** the tunnel.



He walked **along** the road.



He went **out of** the house.



He walked **across** the bridge.



He walked **past** the building.



He got **onto** the bus.



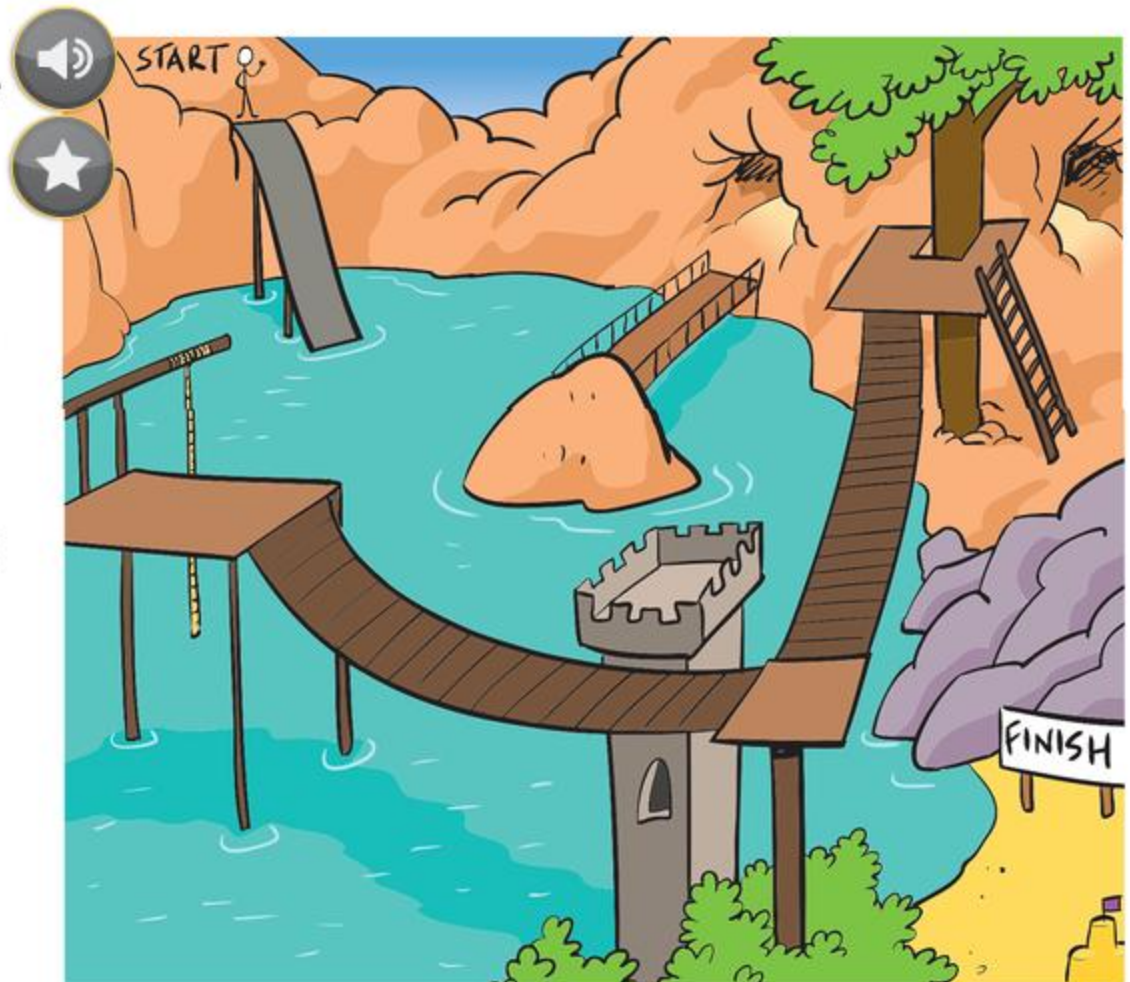
He climbed **up** the ladder.



He walked **around** the building.

* 6 **27.2** Listen and complete the text with the prepositions from the box above.

You start by going down the slide ¹ _____ the water. You swim ² _____ the lake and get ³ _____ the island. Then you run ⁴ _____ the bridge and go ⁵ _____ a tunnel and crawl ⁶ _____ it. When you come ⁷ _____ the tunnel, you have to climb ⁸ _____ a ladder ⁹ _____ a platform. You walk ¹⁰ _____ the bridge and go ¹¹ _____ a tower and then jump ¹² _____ the platform ¹³ _____ the water again. Finally, you swim to the beach and then run ¹⁴ _____ the lake ¹⁵ _____ the finish line as fast as you can.



* 7 Now look at the picture and draw a line to show the correct route.

- 8 GAME** Play in groups. One student mimes an action from exercise 8. The first person to guess the action with a correct preposition gets a point.

You're swimming across the lake.

No, I'm not.

You're crawling through the tunnel.

Yes, I am!

- 9** Circle the correct option. 

- ▶ He climbed up / down the ladder and onto the roof.
- 1 The train **from** / off Manchester will arrive soon.
- 2 He jumped **onto** / to the boat as it was leaving.
- 3 We had to get **from** / off the bus because it broke down.
- 4 She got **into** / onto her car and drove off.
- 5 The quickest way is to go **across** / through the forest.
- 6 There was no lift, so we had to walk **along** / down a lot of stairs to get to the ground floor.
- 7 A tree had fallen down in the road. We had to drive **along** / around it.
- 8 Parachutists jump **down** / out of planes.
- 9 I can't believe it. The bus went **around** / past us without stopping.
- 10 The museum is on the opposite side of the river. You have to walk **across** / past the bridge.

- 10** Read the text and complete it with the prepositions in the box.

above around at down from from
inside onto on top of off on past
through to up

The train journey from Riobamba ¹ _____ Guayaquil in Ecuador is one of the most exciting in the world.







It starts at 2,700 metres ² _____ sea level and then travels ³ _____ the Andes mountains before gradually going all the way ⁴ _____ to the sea at Guayaquil. The train travels ⁵ _____ volcanoes covered in snow and stops ⁶ _____ interesting Andean towns.

There is also something special about the train itself. It has seats on the roof. So most people don't sit ⁷ _____ the train; they climb ⁸ _____ a ladder and sit outside during the journey. When you sit ⁹ _____ the train, the views are fantastic.

Every time the train arrives at a station, people get ¹⁰ _____ the train and walk ¹¹ _____ the colourful markets. After half an hour, they climb back ¹² _____ the train and continue their journey. The whole journey to Guayaquil takes about eight hours. But you can return ¹³ _____ Guayaquil to Riobamba ¹⁴ _____ a bus in only four hours.



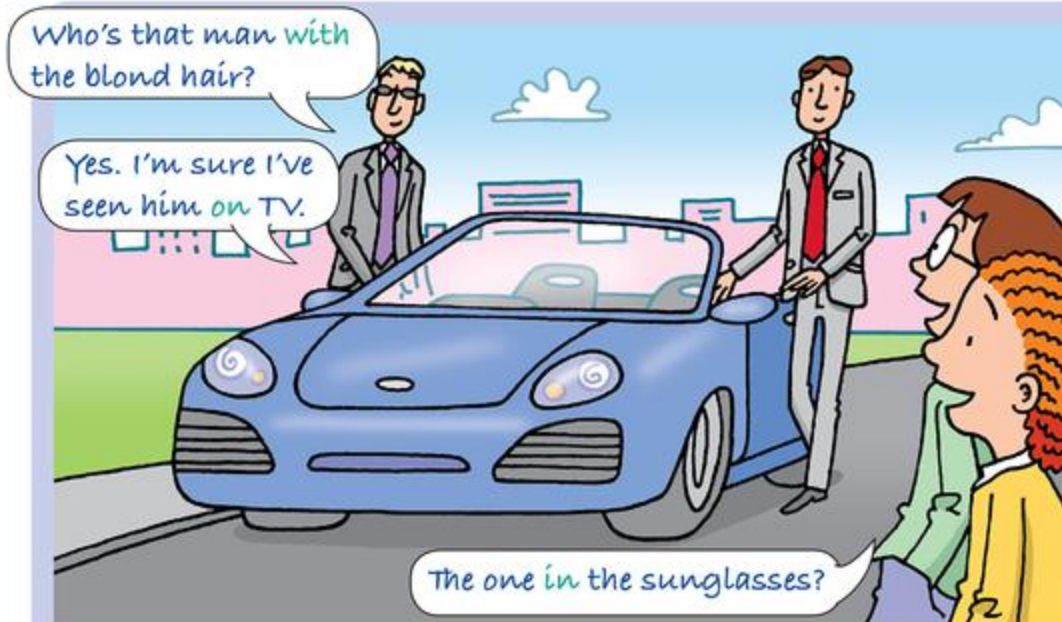
Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

		 	  
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

28 Expressions with prepositions

I can recognize use common expressions with prepositions.

By, for, in, on, with



We can use **by** + noun to say how we travel.

*We arrived in Beijing **by plane**.*

*'How do you get to the hospital?' 'By **car**.'*

But we use **on** (or **in** with *car*) before **a**, **the** or a possessive adjective (**my**, **your**, etc.).

*We went **on the number 17 bus**.*

*Should we go **in your car**?*

We also say **on foot** not *by foot*.

*'Did you drive?' 'No. I came **on foot**.'*

We use **in** to talk about the clothes someone is wearing.

*Who is the girl **in the blue dress**?*

*I don't know the boy **in the black cap**.*

We can use **with** to identify someone. It replaces **who has got**.

*Who is the girl **with blond hair**? (= Who is the girl who has got blond hair?)*

*Have you seen a boy **with a red bag**?*

By

I go to school **by bike / bus / car / plane / train**.

He went to John's house **by accident / mistake**.

She replied **by email / phone / post**.

For

The house was **for sale**. They're going **for a walk / swim**.

Britain invented a lot of sports – golf, **for example**.

In

Look at the person **in the green dress / suit / uniform**.

I read it **in a book**. Let's go **in my car**.

I'm **in a hurry**. **In my opinion**, it's rubbish.

On

There's something interesting **on the TV / internet / radio / computer**.

She spoke to him **on the phone**.

We're going there **on holiday / business / a school trip**.

I'm sitting **on the bus / train / boat**.

He arrived **on foot**. It's **on page 24**.

With

Mary is the girl **with long hair / green eyes**.

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ I found it **in / on** the internet. ★
- 1 I can't wait. I'm **in / on** a hurry. ★
- 2 Do the homework **in / on** page 57.
- 3 My uncle went to China **in / on** business.
- 4 You can't play football **in / on** sandals.
- 5 The car broke down. So we went there **in / on** foot.
- 6 You can't talk to Lucy at the moment. She's **in / on** the phone.
- 7 **In / On** my opinion, social networking is a waste of time.
- 8 I keep all my music **in / on** my computer.

* 2 Complete the sentences with *by, for* or *with*. ★

- ▶ I hit Theo **by** accident. ★
- 1 Have you seen? The house next door is _____ sale.
- 2 Some people – like Harry, _____ example – are good at maths but bad at science.
- 3 Is your brother the boy _____ very short hair?
- 4 You can get to the museum _____ bus or train.
- 5 Can you send me the book _____ post?
- 6 Would you like to go _____ a run?
- 7 I got off at the wrong stop _____ mistake.
- 8 It's the animal _____ big ears.

3

GAME

Work in groups of three. Take turns to ask about a person in the picture, using the words in the box. Who can name the person first?

beard ears feet hair legs nose
shoes sweater trousers

Who's the man with no hair?

That's Sidney.

Yes, it is!

Who's the girl in the red shoes?



4



Look at the picture again and write sentences about five people.

Mandy is the girl in the orange trousers and white shoes.

5

Complete the sentences using *by*, *for*, *in*, *on* or *with* and words from the box.

a hurry holiday a green dress the internet
the bus a walk train red hair

- ▶ I left my homework on the bus.
- 1 It's a nice day. Let's go _____ in the mountains.
- 2 I'm sorry, I have to go now. I'm _____.
- 3 It will be quicker to go _____.
- 4 We don't have to go to school. We're _____.
- 5 Who is that man _____?
- 6 You can look up the information _____.
- 7 Have you seen a girl _____?

6

28.1 Listen and complete the sentences.



- ▶ In your opinion, is English more difficult than maths?
- 1 Do you go to school _____?
- 2 Where can you go _____?
- 3 Are you going _____ this year?
- 4 Can you go to school _____?
- 5 What are you going to watch _____ tonight?
- 6 Do you know anyone _____?

7

Work in pairs. Take turns to ask questions from exercise 5. Answer with full sentences.

In your opinion, is English more difficult than maths?

No. I think maths is more difficult than English.

8 **28.2** Complete the dialogue with prepositions. Then listen and check.



Max: Have you seen this story in the newspaper? About the boy who went missing ¹ _____ a school trip.

David: No, I haven't. What happened?

Max: Well, his class went to York ² _____ train. They visited all the museums and then most children went shopping. But this boy went ³ _____ a walk by the river.

David: Did he get lost?

Max: No. He got on the wrong train ⁴ _____ mistake. All the pupils met at the train station, but they were ⁵ _____ a hurry and the teacher was checking the pupils very quickly. He saw a boy ⁶ _____ a green jacket and thought it was the boy. So they got on the train. In fact, it was a different boy.

David: So where was the boy?

Max: He was ⁷ _____ the wrong train. It was going to London! The teacher realized his mistake and tried to contact the boy ⁸ _____ phone, but his phone wasn't working.

David: What happened in the end?

Max: The train inspector phoned the boy's parents and they came and collected him ⁹ _____ their car. It was a three-hour journey.

David: Wow! The teacher probably felt very bad about it.

Max: ¹⁰ _____ my opinion, it was the boy's fault. He got on the wrong train without waiting for the others.

- 11 My bike is **on** sale. Would you like to try it?

- 12 They did the journey **by** foot. It took six hours.

10



Complete the story using the prompts. Use the past simple and the correct prepositions.

My mum had an embarrassing experience last week. She normally goes to work by bus.

last week/she go/train

Last week she went by train.

she leave/her green coat/the train

she be upset/it be her/favourite coat

Sunday evening/she go/a walk

she see/a woman/a green coat/in front of her

she follow/the woman/foot

the woman/be/a hurry

Finally the woman stopped to look in her bag. My mum said, 'Excuse me!' She looked at the woman's coat. But it wasn't hers! She was very embarrassed.

'Sorry, I thought you were wearing my coat!'

9 Correct the prepositions in bold. Use *by, for, in, on* or *with*.



- ▶ We decided to go **in** a walk. for
- 1 Paul travelled around America **on** bus. _____
- 2 **By** my opinion, you should study science. _____
- 3 The answers are **in** page 187. _____
- 4 Tom went to school **with** a red jacket. _____
- 5 Did you see that programme **in** TV? _____
- 6 Dave is the person **in** the big feet. _____
- 7 They went **for** holiday to Turkey. _____
- 8 There are many species of dolphin, **by** example, the bottlenose. _____
- 9 'What does 'eccentric' mean?' 'Look **on** your dictionary.' _____
- 10 'Why did you send that text message?' 'I did it **in** mistake.' _____

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

Reading and writing

1 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

▶ Leo was B a hurry. He didn't want to be late for the trip.

A at **B** in C on

1 The bus left at 7.30 ____ the morning.

A at B in C on

2 Leo was sitting ____ his best friend.

A at B between C next to

3 They stopped ____ a café for lunch.

A at B inside C on

4 Unfortunately, the bus driver went the wrong way ____ mistake.

A by B for C on

5 Everyone was very tired when they finally got ____ the bus.

A down B from C off

6 In the end, they had been on the bus ____ twelve hours.

A during B for C in

2 Read the advertisement. Then complete the sentences with the missing words. Write one word in each space.

Cowper Sports

We sell clothes and equipment for every sport.

Opening hours

Monday to Friday 9a.m. – 5.30p.m.*

Saturday 9a.m. – 7p.m.

Sunday closed

*We close early on Wednesday at 2p.m.

Where to find us

27 High Street



Bus numbers 12 and 19 stop outside the shop.

Contact us

Phone 0207 2767 2187

Email cowpersports@webhost.com

For more products and special offers visit our website www.cowpersports.com

▶ The shop is closed all day on Sundays.

1 The shop is normally open until _____.

2 You can get to the shop by _____.

3 The shop is _____ the bank and _____ _____.

4 It is open _____ _____ hours on Saturdays.

5 You can contact the shop _____ _____ or email.

6 You can buy more products on _____ _____.

7 The shop closes at 2 p.m. _____ _____ afternoons.

3 Read the article about the Van Gogh Museum in Amsterdam. Choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

The Van Gogh Museum is very busy B the middle of the day and there are often long queues ¹ _____ front of the building. It is a good idea, therefore, to arrive ² _____ nine o'clock in the morning or ³ _____ four o'clock in the afternoon. Or you can visit ⁴ _____ Friday evening, when the museum is open ⁵ _____ nine o'clock. The museum is open every day, except ⁶ _____ 1 January and 25 December.

There is a café ⁷ _____ the museum, so you can buy a drink or a snack during your visit. ⁸ _____ to the café is the museum shop, which has postcards and books ⁹ _____ sale.

▶ A at **B** in C on

1 A at B in C on

2 A after B by C until

3 A after B by C until

4 A at B in C on


5 A before B by C until

6 A at B in C on

7 A above B around C inside

8 A In front B Next C Opposite

9 A by B for C in


- 4  Read the email below. Then write a similar email with directions from the train station to your house.

Hi Julia


Here are directions to my house. Leave the station and walk across the road. There is a bus stop opposite the library. Take the number 17 bus and get off next to the park. Walk through the park and past the shops. I live on Heston Road at number 25.

See you soon.

Listening

- 5  **R8.1** Listen and choose the correct answer A, B or C to complete each sentence.

- ▶ A Friday **B** the evening C the cinema
 1 A TV B the weekend C a big black car
 2 A a tunnel B a bridge C the sea
 3 A six weeks B the summer C my birthday
 4 A the red hair? B the bus? C the black coat?
 5 A of the library B the station C the afternoon
 6 A train B the train C example

- 6  **R8.2** Listen to the conversation. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

above after before during for
 outside under until

- ▶ Carla met Gemma outside the bookshop.
- Carla went to the bookshop _____ it started raining.
 - They stayed in the department store _____ the storm.
 - They were in the department store _____ an hour and a half.
 - The café is _____ the clothes department.
 - They went to the park _____ the rain stopped.
 - They stayed at the park _____ six o'clock.
 - Carla had left her book _____ the cup.

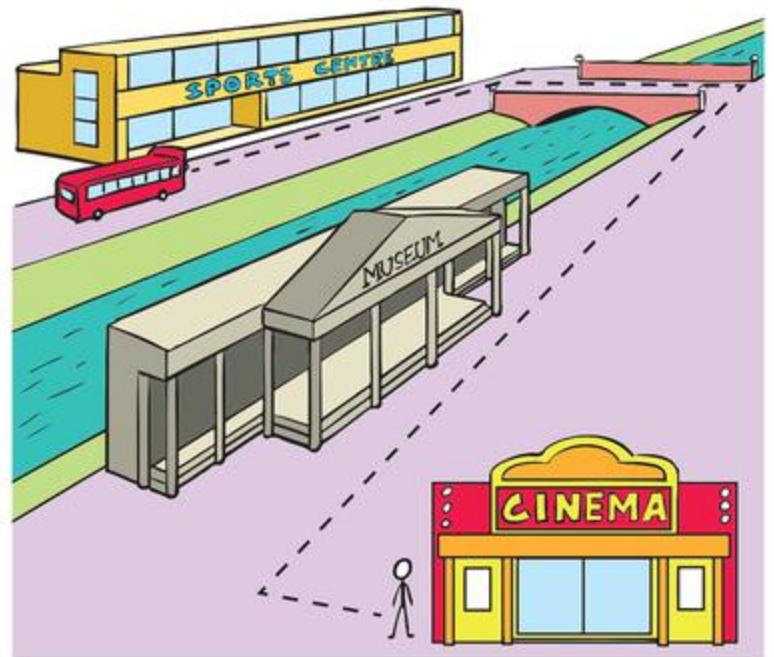
Speaking

- 7 Work in pairs. You are arranging to meet a friend. Student A: ask the questions in the box. Student B: answer using your information. Change roles.

When are we going to meet?
 What time?
 Where are we going to meet?
 How do I get there?

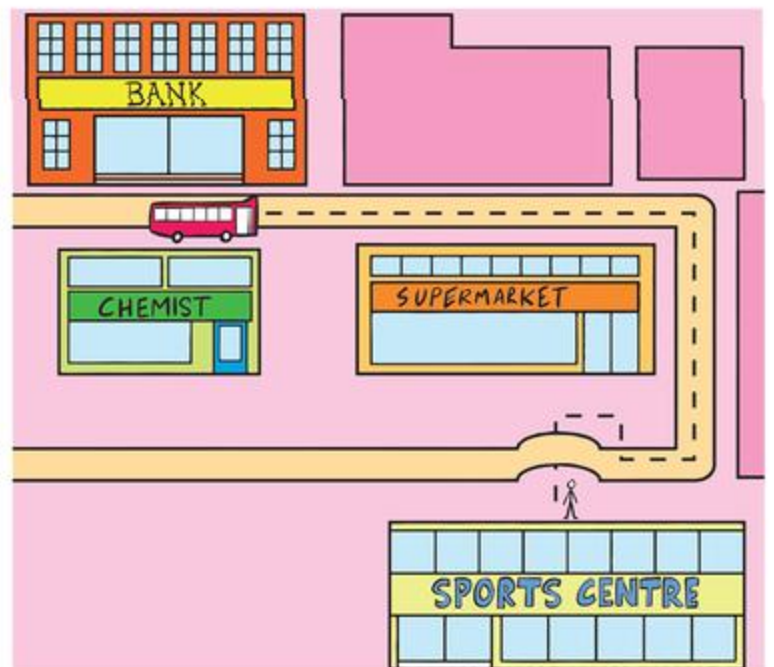
Student B

When: Friday afternoon
 Time: 2.00



Student A

When: Saturday morning
 Time: 10.00



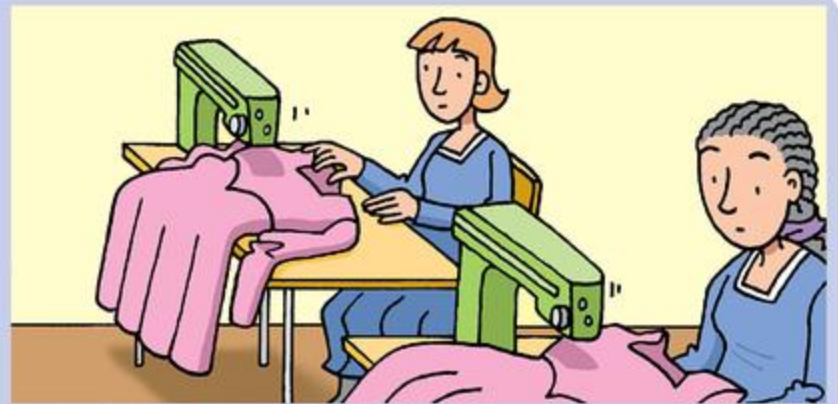
29 Active and passive

I can recognize the difference between active and passive sentences.
I can form and use the present simple passive.

Active and passive



She **designs** clothes.

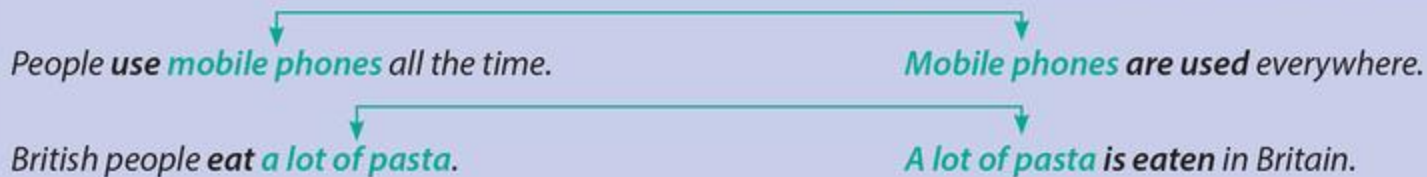


The clothes **are made** in factories.

We can use active or passive sentences to express similar meanings.

In an **active** sentence, the subject does the action to the object.

In a **passive** sentence, the object from the active sentence becomes the subject. The subject of the passive sentence is the receiver of the action.



In passive sentences, the person who does an action is not important.

That house is made of stone.

We don't know who made the house. We want to talk about the house, not the people who built it.

The World Cup is watched around the world.

We want to talk about the World Cup. The people who watch it aren't important.

* 1 Active or passive? Write A or P.



- ▶ Paper is often recycled. P
- ▶ I recycle paper when I've used it. A
- 1 Cola is drunk everywhere. _____
- 2 Some people drink cola every day. _____
- 3 Arabic is spoken in many countries. _____
- 4 My friend speaks Arabic. _____
- 5 We use computers at my school. _____
- 6 Computers are used in many schools. _____
- 7 Hey! That man has stolen my mobile phone. _____
- 8 Mobile phones are often stolen. _____
- 9 Maths is studied everywhere. _____
- 10 Everyone studies maths. _____

** 2 Look at the active sentence (A). Then complete the passive sentence (B).

- ▶ A: People write blogs on the internet.
B: Blogs are written on the internet.
- 1 A: Farmers in Asia grow rice.
B: _____ is grown in Asia.
- 2 A: Shops sell suncream in the summer.
B: _____ is sold in the summer.
- 3 A: We use hot water to make tea.
B: _____ is used to make tea.
- 4 A: Nurses look after sick people in hospital.
B: _____ are looked after in hospital.
- 5 A: Teachers teach science in most schools.
B: _____ is taught in most schools.
- 6 A: Chefs cook chips in most restaurants.
B: _____ are cooked in most restaurants.

Present simple passive

We form the passive with the verb **be** + the past participle.

*Football **is played** all around the world.*

*Tigers **are found** in Asia.*

*Am I **needed** at the concert tomorrow?*

*How is 'cough' **pronounced**?*

*I'm sorry. You're **not invited** to the party.*

*Bread **isn't kept** in the fridge.*

For details about the formation of past participles see Unit 9. A list of irregular past participles is on page 176.

We use the present simple passive to talk about regular events and facts.

*Glass **is made** from sand.*

*These computers **are used** every day.*

We put adverbs of frequency between **be** and the past participle.

*He's **sometimes** seen on TV.*

*Famous people **are often** photographed on holiday.*

* 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **be**.

▶ Oil is found underground.

- The best ice cream _____ made in Italy.
- I _____ driven to school on Mondays.
- Omelettes _____ made with eggs.
- _____ we invited to the party on Sunday?
- How often _____ your room cleaned?
- English and maths _____ studied in all schools.
- Smart phones _____ used to access the internet.
- How much _____ you paid?
- _____ pandas kept in zoos?
- You _____ not paid very much.

* 4 Correct the bold words. Add an extra word if you need to.

▶ Our products **sold** online. are sold

- Everything is **testing** at the factory. _____
- It **is** produced in Korea? _____
- The match is **showed** on a big screen. _____
- I **amn't** invited to many parties. _____
- Normally, letters **deliver** on time. _____
- Where is Spanish **spoke**? _____
- We **isn't** pleased with the result. _____
- Service is **include** in the price. _____
- The bins **emptied** twice a week. _____
- I'm often **woke** up early. _____

* 5 29.1 Listen and match the descriptions 1-6 with a-f.



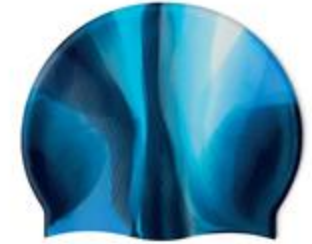
a credit card _____



d jam _____



b chips _____



e swimming hat _____



c dictionary 1



f keyboard _____

* 6 29.2 Write sentences using the present simple passive. Listen and check.



▶ Her car/keep/in the garage

Her car is kept in the garage.

- Cricket/not watch/in America

- Helmets/not wear/in tennis

- you/pay/a lot of money?

- A lot of shellfish/eat/in China

- We/never choose/for the football team

- How many cars/make/in Britain?

- Millions of videos/download/every day

- German/not teach/at my school

- you/ever leave/at home on your own?

- Criminals/always catch/in the end

By + agent

With the passive, we sometimes use **by** to help the person or object that does the action. We call this the agent.

Active: **Some people** hate football, but **others** love it.

Passive: Football is hated **by some people** and loved **by others**.

Remember, when we use the passive, it is not very important who does the action. Even when we use **by**, the agent is not as important as the subject of the verb.
The Simpsons is a great programme. It is watched by millions of people.

We serve fresh bread in our café. All the bread is made by our chef, Fred.

7 **29.3** Who does what? Molly's café is a family business. Look at the picture and write sentences using the passive with **by**. Then listen and check.



▶ serve customers: The customers are served by her daughter.

1 design menus

2 clean café

3 make cakes

4 do washing-up

5 grow vegetables

6 cook the food

8



Write sentences using the words in the table.

bridges	build	architects
houses	design	chefs
medicines	make	chemists
newspapers	fly	engineers
omelettes	play	journalists
pianos	sell	musicians
planes	write	pilots

Bridges are built by engineers.

9

GAME

Play in groups of three. One student chooses an object he or she can see and describes it using the passive. Who can guess the object first?

They're made of glass and plastic. They're worn on the face. They're used for seeing more clearly.

They're glasses!

Yes!

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			

30 Past simple passive

I can form and use the past simple passive.

Past simple passive

This is my dad's first mobile phone.

In the 1980s.



When was it made?



We form the past passive with **was** or **were** + the past participle.

*The team **was chosen** on Thursday.*

*Two windows **were broken** at school last week.*

*The food at the restaurant **wasn't cooked** very well.*

*The drinks **weren't included** in the price.*

***Was** that picture **painted** by Picasso?*

*How many people **were rescued** from the boat?*

We use the past simple passive to talk about actions that finished in the past.

*The Eiffel Tower **was built** in 1889.*

*She **was hurt** in an accident yesterday.*

We can use **by** to say who or what did the action, if necessary.

*The tennis match **was stopped by** rain.*

*I **wasn't taught by** Mrs Spicer.*

When we ask questions with **by**, it goes at the end of the sentence.

*Who were you taught **by**?*

* 1 Circle the correct option.

- ▶ That programme was / were watched by millions of people. 
- 1 Some books was / were left in the classroom.
- 2 Why was / were you disliked at school?
- 3 When was / were your room last painted?
- 4 Was / Were your phone made in China?
- 5 The new station was / were opened by the prime minister.
- 6 Who was / were your computer used by?
- 7 The questions was / were written in French.
- 8 Where was / were your wallet found?
- 9 We was / were amazed by the team's performance.
- 10 Who was / were woken up by the storm last night?

* 2 Write affirmative and negative sentences.

- ▶ The light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison. (invent)
- ▶ The job wasn't finished on time. (not finish)
- 1 My shoes _____ very quickly. (repair)
- 2 The ice cream _____ in the freezer. (not keep)
- 3 The train _____ for half an hour. (delay)
- 4 I worked hard but I _____ any money. (not pay)

- 5 The exams _____ by Mrs Salmon. (mark)
- 6 The first football World Cup _____ by Uruguay. (win)
- 7 We _____ to take our mobile phones. (not allow)
- 8 Salt _____ to the pasta. (not add)
- 9 All the toys _____ into boxes at the factory. (pack)
- 10 Your job application _____ on time. (not send)

* 3 You are asking a friend about a party that happened yesterday. Write passive questions.

- ▶ how many people/invite
How many people were invited?
- 1 where/the cars/park _____?
- 2 all the food/eat _____?
- 3 what sort of music/play _____?
- 4 anything/broken _____?

4 **30.1** Now listen to Sally talking to Emma, and check the questions you wrote in exercise 3. Then listen again and answer the questions. Use passive sentences.

▶ About 50 people were invited.

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____

5 Rewrite the active questions in this quiz using passive forms.

- 1 When did they invent fizzy drinks?
When were fizzy drinks invented?
- 2 Who designed the Statue of Liberty?
Who was the Statue of Liberty designed by?
- 3 Where did they hold the 2012 Olympic Games?

- 4 Who invented Coca Cola®?

- 5 When did someone climb Mount Everest for the first time?

- 6 Who composed the music for the ballet 'Swan Lake'?

- 7 When did someone use the first mobile phone?

- 8 Where did they invent kites?

- 9 Who won the 2010 football World Cup?

6 **30.2** Match the answers (a–i) to the quiz questions (1–9) in exercise 5. Listen and check.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| a Tchaikovsky _____ | f in 1770 <u>1</u> |
| b John Pemberton _____ | g Auguste Bartholdi _____ |
| c in London _____ | h in 1973 _____ |
| d in 1953 _____ | i in China _____ |
| e Spain _____ | |

7 Work in groups. Turn to page 169.

8 Complete the text with the past simple active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

A short history of coffee



No one knows when the first cup of coffee was drunk. Some people say it was made (make) in the 9th century by a young man in Ethiopia who looked after goats.

He ¹ _____ (try) the beans of a coffee plant but they tasted bitter, so he ² _____ (throw) them on a fire. But when the beans ³ _____ (roast) in the fire, the young man noticed a wonderful smell. He ⁴ _____ (take) the beans from the fire and boiled them with water. In this way, the first cup of coffee ⁵ _____ (produce).

In fact, the first evidence for coffee comes from the 1400s. Plants ⁶ _____ (grow) in Yemen and ground coffee ⁷ _____ (export) to other Arab countries.

People ⁸ _____ (love) the drink and in the 1500s 'coffee houses', or cafés, ⁹ _____ (open) across the Arab world. They were places where coffee ¹⁰ _____ (drink), chess ¹¹ _____ (play) and people ¹² _____ (chat).

At the end of the 1500s coffee ¹³ _____ (sell) in Europe for the first time. In the next hundred years, coffee plants ¹⁴ _____ (transport) all over the world by the Dutch, the French and the British. Coffee ¹⁵ _____ (become) one of the most important products for many countries.

Self-evaluation Rate your progress.

	😊	😊😊	😊😊😊
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

Reading and writing

1 What is the situation? Match pictures 1–5 with sentences A–H. You don't need to use all the sentences.



- A Toby made pasta with tomato sauce.
- B English is spoken there.
- C Pasta is made from flour and water.
- D The climber was found by a dog.
- E Everything was eaten.
- F She spoke to them in English.
- G The men found a dog in the country.
- H Max ate a lot.

2 Read the sentences about plastic. Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ The first type of plastic was B in 1856.
A invent B invented C inventing
- 1 It was created ___ Alexander Parkes.
A by B with C of
- 2 It ___ Parkesine.
A called B was call C was called
- 3 More types of plastic ___ produced between 1865 and 1927.
A are B is C were
- 4 In 1927 polyamide ___ discovered by scientists.
A is B was C were
- 5 Polyamide is also ___ as 'nylon'.
A know B known C knew
- 6 In 1939 the first nylon clothes ____.
A are sold B sold C were sold
- 7 They were ___ by millions of ordinary people.
A buyed B bought C buying
- 8 Now, thousands of products are made ___ plastic.
A of B by C at

3 Read part of an email from your English friend. Write a reply to your friend about an exciting day you had.

I wanted to tell you about my exciting day last week. I won a prize in a writing competition, and the prize was a trip to a castle! I was taken in a taxi with my mum and dad. Some other prize winners were invited too. We were given a tour of the castle, and then a delicious lunch was cooked for us in the restaurant. But the best thing was that our stories were published in a magazine.

4 Complete the text with a passive or active form of the verb in brackets.

Hever Castle is one of the most famous castles in England. It was built in 1270, and then two hundred years later it ¹_____ (buy) by Geoffrey Boleyn. He ²_____ (make) the castle bigger and in the 1500s it was the home of Anne Boleyn, who ³_____ (become) the wife of King Henry VIII but ⁴_____ (kill) by him in 1536.

In the 1800s, the castle ⁵_____ (not look) after properly and by 1900 it was in a very bad state. In 1903, it ⁶_____ (sell) to William Astor, one of the richest men in America. The castle ⁷_____ (repair) and the Astor family ⁸_____ (live) in it until 1983.

Now, Hever Castle ⁹_____ (own) by a big company and ¹⁰_____ (visit) by thousands of tourists every year.



Listening

5 **R9.1** Listen and match 1–6 to A–F.



- A I wasn't invited to the party. ____
- B They don't sell it in supermarkets. ____
- C It was made in China. 1
- D We were invited to the party. ____
- E They weren't made in China. ____
- F They sell them in supermarkets. ____

6 **R9.2** You will hear a description of how sun-dried tomatoes are produced. Complete the sentences using passive forms.



The tomatoes are grown in Spain.
 When they are ripe, they ¹_____, washed and ²_____ for quality.
 Then they ³_____ in half and dried in the sun.
 When the tomatoes are dried, they ⁴_____ into jars with olive oil.
 Then they ⁵_____ by lorry to countries across Europe.
 Sun-dried tomatoes ⁶_____ in supermarkets and ⁷_____ in salads or with pasta.

Speaking

7 Work in pairs. Choose an object from the pictures. Your partner asks questions to guess the object.

- What is it used for?
It's used for sleeping.
- What is it made of?
It's made of wood.
- Where is it found?
It's found in a bedroom.
- Is it a bed?
Yes it is!



Reading and writing

- 1 Mr Rankin is a school inspector. Look at his diary and read the sentences 1–8. Are the sentences correct ✓ or incorrect ✗?

Tuesday:	9 a.m.–5p.m.: inspect Moorland School evening – go to cinema
Wednesday:	write report for Moorland School
Thursday:	7 a.m. train to Manchester; arrive 9.30 a.m. 10 a.m.–6 p.m.: inspect Grove High School 8 p.m. dinner at hotel
Friday:	9 a.m. meet head teacher, Grove High School 11.30 a.m. train home; arrive 2 p.m. evening: go to gym
Saturday:	morning: take children swimming afternoon: buy new car?

- It is 9 a.m. on Thursday morning.
- ▶ Mr Rankin went to Moorland School two days ago. ✓
- 1 He's going to the gym tomorrow evening. —
- 2 He's just arrived in Manchester. —
- 3 At lunchtime on Tuesday he was inspecting Moorland School. —
- 4 He can't go shopping on Saturday morning. —
- 5 He's already met the head teacher of Grove High School. —
- 6 He's been on the train for two hours. —
- 7 He's definitely going to buy a new car on Saturday. —
- 8 He'd visited Moorland School when he went to the cinema. —

- 2 Read the sentences about a school music concert. Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ The concert will be c Thursday evening.
A at B in C on
- 1 We ___ tickets three days ago.
A bought B were buying C have bought
- 2 The concert will be good. ___ has practised hard.
A Anyone B Everyone C Someone
- 3 ___ they're nervous, the students are looking forward to the concert.
A Although B Because C But
- 4 Most students will play ___ music.
A classical B a classical C the classical
- 5 I think Kate is ___ singer.
A best B the best C he better
- 6 She enjoys ___ in public.
A sing B singing C to sing
- 7 You ___ talk during the performance.
A don't have to B mustn't C couldn't
- 8 After the concert, ___ will be drinks and snacks in the main hall.
A it B they C there



3 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to answer each question.

- ▶ Have you seen the film yet? B
 A Yes, I did.
 B No, I haven't.
 C Yes, I've seen.

- 1 When are you going on holiday? ____
 A Last week.
 B At the summer
 C In July.
- 2 I'd like some butter, please. ____
 A I'm sorry. We haven't got some.
 B How much would you like?
 C There are some over there.

- 3 Is that a new book? ____
 A No. It's written three years ago.
 B Yes. It was wrote recently.
 C No. It was written in 2003.
- 4 Whose are those trainers? ____
 A They're Mary's.
 B They're her's.
 C They're Mary.
- 5 How often do you play football? ____
 A No, I don't.
 B I don't never play football.
 C I play it twice a week.

4 Read the text below and choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

Surf School

I've just A back from *Endless Summer Camp*. It's a camp in California ¹ ____ you learn to surf.

Every day, we had surfing classes in small groups. I'd never ² ____ it before but by the end of the week, I could ³ ____ up on the board and surf some small waves. It was cool.

⁴ ____ the evening, I played table tennis and chatted with ⁵ ____ new friends. I also had fantastic food. All the meals were included and lunch ⁶ ____ on the beach!

Endless isn't as cheap ⁷ ____ other surf camps. I had to get a job to pay for it. But it was ⁸ ____ holiday I've ever had. If I ⁹ ____ enough money next year, I'll definitely go back.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| ▶ <u>A</u> come | B came | C coming |
| 1 A which | B where | C that |
| 2 A do | B did | C done |
| 3 A stand | B to stand | C stood |
| 4 A At | B In | C On |
| 5 A mine | B my | C the |
| 6 A served | B was serve | C was served |
| 7 A as | B than | C of |
| 8 A most exciting | B the more exciting | C the most exciting |
| 9 A earn | B earned | C will earn |

5 What does David say to Paul? Match 1–7 with A–H. You don't need to use all the letters.

David: I'm going to the park. Do you want to come with me?

Paul: C

David: Why not?

Paul: 1 _____

David: What does he want?

Paul: 2 _____

David: Did you do badly?

Paul: 3 _____

David: It wasn't as bad as Peter's, was it?

Paul: 4 _____

David: When do you have to be there?

Paul: 5 _____

David: How long will it take?

Paul: 6 _____

David: If it was less time, I'd wait.

Paul: 7 _____

- A Yes. I got a terrible mark.
 B In five minutes.
 C No, I'm sorry. I can't.
 D To talk about my maths exam
 E Don't worry. My mum's going to collect me at five o'clock.
 F Yes, it was. Mr Brown said it was the worst in the class.
 G Because I have to see Mr Brown.
 H An hour.

6 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than two words.

▶ It's impossible to find my keys.

I can't find my keys.

1 These shoes belong to me.

These shoes are _____.

2 My little brother isn't old enough to go to school.

My little brother _____ young to go to school.

3 It wasn't funny but Ronny laughed.

_____ it wasn't funny, Ronny laughed.

4 My phone is cheaper than yours.

My phone isn't as _____ yours.

5 Tony said, 'I like those shoes.'

Tony said that _____ those shoes.

6 Linda's going to help us. She promised.

Linda promised _____ us.

7 Read the safety rules about paintball. Complete the sentences with the correct names.

Paintball Safety Rules

You must wear safety glasses at all times

You mustn't wear shorts or T-shirts

You can wear a cap or hat

You don't have to wear gloves

You must be thirteen or over

You must be over 1.50m

Alex – 12 years, 1.52m

Fred – 13 years, 1.49m

Tom – 14 years, 1.54m

▶ Tom is the tallest.

1 _____ is too young to do paintball.

2 _____ is shorter than Alex.

3 _____ isn't as old as Fred.

4 _____ and _____ are tall enough to do paintball.

5 _____ can do paintball.

6 _____ and _____ can't do paintball.


8 Complete the text. Write one word in each space.

Pasta is officially the most popular food
1 _____ the world. A global survey says that it is more popular 2 _____ meat, rice or pizza.

Although pasta 3 _____ existed for a thousand years, it only became popular a hundred years 4 _____, when a lot 5 _____ Italians moved to the United States. Economists predict we 6 _____ spend £12 billion on pasta next year.

Why 7 _____ people like pasta? Firstly, it is cheap: it 8 _____ made from wheat and water. Secondly, it is convenient: you 9 _____ keep it in your cupboard for a long time. Thirdly, it is fun: there 10 _____ more than 600 different shapes.

11 _____ country eats the most pasta? Italy, of course. 12 _____ much do they eat? An amazing 26kg per person every year!

9  Read the email from your pen friend. Then write an email about the food that you eat.

Hi Molly

You say that you like couscous. I've never eaten couscous, but I enjoy new food. If I visited you, I'd like to try it.

I like all kinds of food, but my favourite food is probably bread. So, for example, today I ate some toast for breakfast and I'm going to eat sandwiches for lunch. At our school you don't have to eat at the school canteen, so I normally bring my own food.

What other food do you like?

10 Match 1–5 to A–H. You don't need to use all the letters.



- A We mustn't play football here.
- B He doesn't have to play football.
- C He isn't as fast as her.
- D He isn't old enough to play with them.
- E He's going to win.
- F I wish he would win sometimes.
- G He can't play football at the moment.
- H He's just won.

11 Read the sentences about a shopping trip. Choose the correct letter A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- ▶ Isabel and her mum enjoy B.
A to shop **B** shopping C shop
- 1 At the moment, Isabel ___ for some new shoes.
A looks B is looking C will look
- 2 She ___ her old shoes a year ago.
A bought B has bought C was buying
- 3 She ___ any nice shoes yet.
A isn't trying B hasn't tried C didn't try
- 4 Isabel and her mum ___ in the shoe shop for an hour.
A are B were being C have been
- 5 When Isabel has bought some shoes, they ___ to a dress shop.
A go B went C will go
- 6 Isabel's mum hopes ___ a new dress.
A buy B to buy C buying
- 7 She ___ to a wedding next week.
A goes B is going C will go
- 8 Unfortunately, the dress that ___ is too expensive.
A she wants B she is wanting C wants
- 9 She ___ to buy something cheaper.
A must B will have C can

12 Choose the correct letter A, B or C to answer each question.

- ▶ Can I have a sandwich? B
 A I'm sorry. There's too much bread.
 B I'm sorry. We haven't got enough bread.
 C I'm sorry. I've got enough bread.
- 1 Where's John at the moment? ____
 A He plays tennis.
 B He's listening to music in his room.
 C He's being at the cinema.
- 2 I don't know what to do. ____
 A If I were you, I'd ask your parents.
 B If I'm you, I'll phone your brother.
 C If I were you, you'll study harder.
- 3 Is Jenny here? ____
 A Yes. She just has come.
 B No. She arrives never on time.
 C Yes. She's been here for ten minutes.
- 4 I enjoyed the film. ____
 A It was great, wasn't it?
 B It was brilliant, was it?
 C It wasn't very good, was it?
- 5 Who has Mary invited to the party? ____
 A Yes. She invited me.
 B Tanya has invited her.
 C She has invited Yasmin.

13 Read the text below and choose the correct letter A, B or C for each space.

Dream job

Ben Southall, from Hampshire in England, A travel. Three years ago, while he ¹ ____ around Africa, he saw an interesting job advert. 'Be an Island Caretaker ² ____ six months. You have to look after a tropical island next to the Great Barrier Reef in Australia.' It ³ ____ as 'the best job in the world'.

35,000 people wanted the job, but Ben was the one ⁴ ____ got it. He ⁵ ____ to Australia and moved onto the island. He had a brilliant time. Every day he did ⁶ ____ different – diving, jet-skiing, taking photos and writing blogs.

⁷ ____ he came to Australia, Ben had spent many years travelling. By the time he finished the job, he ⁸ ____ in love with Australia and decided to stay. 'This is the first time ⁹ ____ in the same place for a long time and I think it's the best place ¹⁰ ____ the world.'

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| ▶ <u>A</u> loves | B is loving | C love |
| 1 A had travelled | B is travelling | C was travelling |
| 2 A during | B for | C until |
| 3 A described | B was described | C was describe |
| 4 A who | B which | C what |
| 5 A flied | B flew | C flown |
| 6 A anything | B everything | C something |
| 7 A After | B Before | C While |
| 8 A has fallen | B fell | C had fallen |
| 9 A I've stayed | B I stayed | C I'd stayed |
| 10 A at | B in | C of |

14 What does Robert say to Charlie?

Match A–G to 1–6.

- Charlie:** Have you decided what you're going to study next year?
Robert: ▶ C
- Charlie:** How many subjects do you have to take?
Robert: ¹ ____
- Charlie:** What subjects are you thinking of?
Robert: ² ____
- Charlie:** Which are your favourites?
Robert: ³ ____
- Charlie:** So for the third, it's either chemistry or English. Which do you prefer?
Robert: ⁴ ____
- Charlie:** It depends. What do you want to study at university?
Robert: ⁵ ____
- Charlie:** You won't have to study chemistry at university if you want to be a lawyer.
Robert: ⁶ ____
- Charlie:** If I were you, I'd do English. If you enjoy a subject, you'll do better at it.

- A Maths and history. I'll definitely do those.
 B I'm not sure. I'd like to become a lawyer.
 C Not yet.
 D Maths, chemistry, history and English literature.
 E That's true. So what do you recommend?
 F Three.
 G I like English more than chemistry, but it isn't as useful, is it?

15 Read the sentences. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- ▶ She left work at six o'clock.
She worked until six o'clock.
- 1 There's no one here.
There isn't _____ here.
- 2 Ryan first met Oscar two years ago.
Ryan _____ Oscar for two years.
- 3 They make those shoes in Vietnam.
Those shoes _____ in Vietnam.

- 4 I sit next to a boy. He's called Jim.
The boy _____ next to is called Jim.
- 5 My sister said, 'I can't find my keys.'
My sister said that _____ find _____ keys.
- 6 He talks too much.
I wish he _____ less.
- 7 We agreed to meet at three o'clock.
We _____ at three o'clock.

16 Read Cathy's email and look at the information about five phones. Which phone will Cathy recommend?

Hi Vicky

Thanks for your email. You said you wanted a phone that was quite small, with a very good camera, for less than £100. You said it doesn't have to have a touch screen.

I've looked on the internet and I'm sending you a link to some information about five phones. The Daxta is probably too heavy. The Mode would be good if it had a better camera. The Yappa isn't as cheap as the Zimmia but it's lighter.

Personally, I prefer phones that are Japanese, and I don't think you should buy the cheapest one. If I were you, I'd buy the ...

Cathy

	Mode 6	Zimmia XT	Pliad Y4	Daxta A50	Yapp 260
Weight	65g	96g	80g	108g	78g
Price	£99	£80	£105	£95	£89
Made in	Japan	China	Japan	USA	Japan
Camera	**	***	*****	***	****
Touchscreen	✓	✗	✓	✓	✗

17 Complete the text. Write one word for each space.

Alton Towers is the most popular theme park in Britain. It ¹ _____ visited by almost three million people every year. The park has been open to the public ² _____ over a hundred years. At first, people came ³ _____ visit the old house and its gardens. Then, ⁴ _____ 1973, it was bought ⁵ _____ a rich businessman and everything changed. ⁶ _____ 4 April 1980, the *Corkscrew* opened. At the time, it was the ⁷ _____ exciting ride in Britain and every teenager in the country wanted ⁸ _____ go to Alton Towers. The *Corkscrew* was closed a few years ⁹ _____, but now there are ¹⁰ _____ lot of new, more exciting rides, ¹¹ _____ example, *Air* and *Th13teen*). Modern teenagers, like their parents, love Alton Towers.

- 18 Read the email from Bill's pen friend. Then write an email about an activity that you enjoy.

Hi Bill

My favourite activity is going to theme parks. I love feeling scared!

A few weeks ago I went to Thorpe Park. The best ride was 'The Swarm'. It was the first time I'd tried it, and it was amazing.

If I have enough money, I'll go to Alton Towers in the summer. They've just built a new ride and everyone says I have to go on it!

- 20 **R10.2** Oscar is on holiday in Scotland. You will hear him talking to his friend Frank. Decide if each sentence is correct (Yes) or incorrect (No).

- ▶ The weather in Scotland is worse than in England. No
- Frank has been in Scotland for three days. _____
 - They've already visited Edinburgh Castle. _____
 - While Oscar went cycling, his mum and sister drove to see some friends. _____
 - Oscar is going to stay with his friends tomorrow. _____
 - Oscar can't climb the mountain. _____
 - Oscar is having a picnic today. _____
 - Frank has visited Scotland and enjoyed it. _____

Listening

- 19 **R10.1** Listen. Choose the correct picture A, B or C.



▶ A



B



C



1 A



B



C



2 A



B



C



3 A



B



C



4 A



B



C



5 A



B



C


- 21 **R10.3** Listen and match the questions 1–9 with the replies A–I.

- A No. I'm not old enough. _____
 B Yes, it is. _____
 C For three years. _____
 D In three weeks. 1
 E Two years ago. _____
 F Yes. It's a very warm day. _____
 G No. It's too late. _____
 H I play basketball at the sports centre. _____
 I I'm waiting at the bus stop. _____

- 22 **R10.4** William is invited to the sports prize evening at school. You will hear him talking to his friend Harry. Are the sentences correct ✓ or incorrect x?

- ▶ William is on his way to the sports prize evening. x
- It is the first time William has been to the sports prize evening. _____
 - William is definitely going to win a prize. _____
 - The prizes are given by Mr Simms. _____
 - There isn't enough time to give a lot of prizes. _____
 - If you win an event at sports day, you will get a prize. _____
 - William went to four or five sports clubs last year. _____
 - William has to wear a suit and tie. _____
 - Harry isn't going to the sports prize evening. _____


Speaking

- 23  Student B: turn to page 172. Student A: you went to a party two days ago. Look at the invitation below and answer your partner's questions.

You are invited to
~~~~~  
**Mike's birthday party**  
•  
Please come for a bowling evening  
at the Wide Alley  
May 14, 7.30 p.m.  
  
Entrance is £5 but there  
will be free food and drink.

Whose party did you go to?


I went to Mike's party.

- 24  Student B: turn to page 172. Student A: your partner is going to a party in two days' time. Ask your partner questions and complete the table.

|           |       |
|-----------|-------|
| Whose?    | Gemma |
| What?     |       |
| Where?    |       |
| When?     |       |
| How much? |       |

Whose party are you going to?


I'm going to Gemma's party.

- 25  Student B: turn to page 172. Student A: you are going to a sports event. Look at the ticket below and answer your partner's questions.

Basketball World Final  
**United States v Spain**  
at the Olympic Stadium  
  
7.30 p.m.     £40

What are you going to see?

I'm going to see the Basketball World Final.

- 26  Student B: turn to page 172. Student A: Your partner has just been shopping. Look at the table and ask questions about what he or she has bought.

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Name of shop                |  |
| Thing that he or she bought |  |
| Made in                     |  |
| Price                       |  |
| Cash or credit card?        |  |

Which shop did you go to?

I went to Mega Fashion Store.



# Extra information

## Student A

### Unit 4

- 10** **GAME** Answer Student B's questions with the information below. Use *it is*, *there's*, *there are*.

|                      |                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| London time          | 12 p.m., 5 February                      |
| Local time           | 7 a.m.                                   |
| Weather              | snowing                                  |
| Distance from London | about 5,500 km                           |
| Population           | 8 million                                |
| Interesting sights   | Empire State Building, Statue of Liberty |

What time is it with you?

It's seven o'clock in the morning.

[Answer = New York]

### Unit 6

**6**

Gorillas come from Africa. They are vegetarian and eat grass and plants, fruit, roots, shoots and tree bark. They can weigh up to 250 kg and can live for 40 years.

Kangaroos come from Australia. They eat grass and plants. They weigh about 54 kg. Red kangaroos can live for about 20 years.

Penguins come from the Antarctic continent. They eat fish. The largest penguin is the Emperor penguin, which weighs about 35 kg. They live for 15–20 years.

Tigers come from Asia. The most common tiger is the Bengal Tiger from India. They are carnivores and eat meat.

They weigh about 170 kg and live for 8–10 years.

### Unit 8

- 4** **GAME** Mime an action from the list below for ten seconds. When you finish, student B guesses the action. The person who guesses correctly gets a point.

|                       |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| climb a tree          | ski          |
| eat an ice cream      | take a photo |
| put a book on a shelf | send a text  |

### Unit 12

- 7** **GAME** Look at the tables about people's holiday plans. In turns, ask questions about table A and answer questions about table B.

|                  |               |                     |                       |
|------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| America          | India         | Spain               | Turkey                |
| in the spring    | in the summer | in the autumn       | in the winter         |
| fly              | drive         | take train          | take bus              |
| lie on the beach | play sport    | visit famous places | walk in the mountains |

| Table A     | Oscar | Bella and Kate |
|-------------|-------|----------------|
| Destination |       |                |
| Time        |       |                |
| Transport   |       |                |
| Activity    |       |                |

Is Oscar going to go to India?


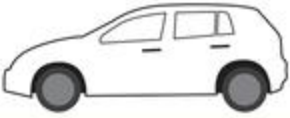




Are Bella and Kate going to take the bus?

| Table B     | Tanya                 | Ryan and Henry   |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| Destination | France                | Malaysia         |
| Time        | summer                | winter           |
| Transport   | drive                 | fly              |
| Activity    | walk in the mountains | lie on the beach |

## Unit 19

6

Look at the table below and ask your partner questions to complete the information.

|     | House | Car                                                                                 |
|-----|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Jim | 17    |    |
|     |       |    |
| Tom | 9     |    |
|     | 120   |                                                                                     |
| Sue | 68    |  |
| Ben |       |                                                                                     |
| Amy | 103   |  |
|     |       |  |

Who is the person who lives at number ...?

Who is the person who drives a ... car?

What colour is the car that .... drives?

What number is the house that .... lives at?

## Revision 2

16 Look at the table below and answer your partner's questions.

|                   |                                          |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Name              | Emma                                     |
| Country           | Australia                                |
| Subjects / study? | history and politics                     |
| Do / last summer? | work in café; visit China                |
| Plans for future? | be a journalist; travel around the world |

## Revision 5

8

Answer your partner's questions.

Emma got up at six o'clock. She was in a hurry because she had an exam. She picked up her bag and went to school. On the bus, her friend sat next to her. 'That's not your bag, is it?' Emma looked at it. It was her sister's bag.

What time did Emma get up?

She got up at six o'clock.

## Unit 30

7



Work in groups. Do some research and write your own quiz. Write two questions for each topic below, using passive verbs.

|                    |         |                     |
|--------------------|---------|---------------------|
| Science and nature | History | Geography           |
| Books              | Sport   | TV, Music and Films |

History: When was the first man sent into space?

Now ask another group your quiz questions. Which group has more correct answers?

History: When was the first man sent into space?

In 1961.

## Student B

### Unit 4

- 10** **GAME** Answer student A's questions with the information below. Use *it is, there's, there are*.

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| London time          | 12 p.m., 5th February   |
| Local time           | 5.30 p.m.               |
| Weather              | warm and sunny          |
| Distance from London | about 7,000 km          |
| Population           | 250,000                 |
| Interesting sights   | Taj Mahal (200 km away) |

What time is it with you?

It's half past five in the afternoon.

[Answer = New Delhi]

### Unit 7

- 8** Look at the text A and answer student A's questions. Then ask student A questions about text B.

**A** Sam and Jack weren't at school yesterday. They were at home. They were ill. Sam was tired and he was in bed. Jack wasn't in bed. He was on the sofa. They were bored. There wasn't a lot to do.

Were Sam and Jack at school yesterday?

No, they weren't.

**B** Saturday was a nice day. It \_\_\_\_\_ very hot. Lucy and Sara \_\_\_\_\_ at the beach. They \_\_\_\_\_ at the shops. Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ happy, because the shops \_\_\_\_\_ busy. Sara \_\_\_\_\_ happy. She \_\_\_\_\_ bored and hungry, but there \_\_\_\_\_ a good café.

Was Saturday a nice day?

Yes, it was.

## Unit 8

- 4** Mime an action from the list below. When you finish, student A guesses the action. The person who guesses correctly gets a point.

cook a meal    clean your room    cross the road  
try on shoes    watch TV    get on a bus

## Unit 12

- 7** **GAME** In turns, ask questions about table B, complete the information and answer questions about table A.

Australia    Egypt    France    Malaysia  
in the spring/summer/autumn/winter  
fly    drive    take train    take bus  
lie on the beach    play sport  
visit famous places    walk in the mountains

| Table B     | Tanya | Ryan and Henry |
|-------------|-------|----------------|
| Destination |       |                |
| Time        |       |                |
| Transport   |       |                |
| Activity    |       |                |

Is Tanya going to go to Egypt?

| Table A     | Oscar      | Bella and Kate      |
|-------------|------------|---------------------|
| Destination | Spain      | India               |
| Time        | spring     | autumn              |
| Transport   | take bus   | fly                 |
| Activity    | play sport | visit famous places |

## Revision 2

- 16** Look at the table below and use the information to answer your partner's questions.


|                   |                                          |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Name              | Alex                                     |
| Country           | Britain                                  |
| Subjects / study? | chemistry and biology                    |
| Do / last summer? | study hard; go camping                   |
| Plans for future? | be a doctor; work in a different country |

## Unit 25

**12** Use the answers below to check another group's work.

- 1 He's got an **old French** dictionary.  
✓
- 2 I **almost** have finished washing-up.  
✗ I have **almost** finished washing-up.
- 3 Everyone spoke **quietly**.  
✓
- 4 Has she got **dark** hair?  
✓
- 5 What time does **normally** school end?  
✗ What time does school **normally** end?
- 6 Is your **good** school?  
✗ Is your school **good**?
- 7 It was the first time she'd **ever** caught a fish.  
✓
- 8 Do you **always** boil vegetables?  
✓
- 9 We'll **tomorrow** learn those new words.  
✗ We'll learn those new words **tomorrow**.
- 10 He was carrying a **black big** bag.  
✗ He was carrying a **big black** bag.

## Unit 20

**10**  Work in pairs. Say the beginning of a sentence from the table below. Your partner completes it with *although* or *because* and an ending from his or her table. Then swap roles.

### Beginnings

He travelled by train

He went to bed late

He didn't go swimming

He borrowed my phone

He opened the window

### Endings

she was unhappy

she arrived late

she was rich


she painted the best picture

it was very long

He travelled by train ...

because he was afraid of flying.

## Revision 5


**8**  Answer your partner's questions.

Andy arrived home at nine o'clock. He was tired because it was late. He was also hungry. He found some cake in the fridge. While he was eating, his mum arrived. 'Oh no! What are you doing?' said his mum. It was his sister's birthday cake.

What time did Andy arrive home?

He arrived home at nine o'clock.

## Unit 23

**8**  **GAME** Choose an annoying situation from the list below. Tell your partner.

I'm listening to very loud music.  
My bedroom is dirty.  
I'm talking on the phone at the dinner table.  
I've forgotten my homework again.  
I've left the door open.  
I can't find my keys.  
I play computer games all the time.  
I'm not ready to go to school and I'm already late.

I'm listening to very loud music.

I wish you'd turn that music off.

## Revision 6

- 8 Listen to student A and complete the sentence with one of the results below. Swap roles. Use first or second conditionals.

### Possible results

stay at home  
watch TV  
play computer games  
make a sandwich  
read a book  
lie in bed and do nothing

### Situations

you're late for school  
you stay at home in the summer holidays  
there isn't anything good on TV  
you haven't got enough money for the bus

If you're late for school, ...

I'll phone my parents.

If you were late for school, ...

I'd phone my parents.

## Revision 10

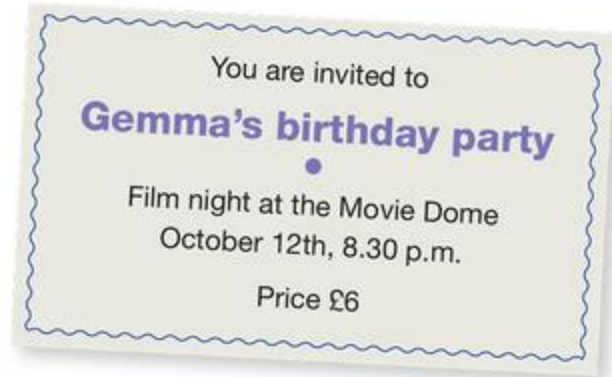
- 23 Your partner went to a party two days ago. Ask your partner questions and complete the table.

|           |      |
|-----------|------|
| Whose?    | Mike |
| What?     |      |
| Where?    |      |
| When?     |      |
| How much? |      |

Whose party did you go to?

I went to Mike's party.

- 24 You are going to a party in two days' time. Look at the invitation and answer your partner's questions.



Whose party are you going to?

I'm going to Gemma's party.

- 25 Your partner is going to a sports event. Look at the table and ask questions about the event.

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| Event |  |
| Teams |  |
| Place |  |
| Time  |  |
| Price |  |

What are you going to see?

I'm going to see the Basketball World Final.

- 26 You have just been shopping. Look at the receipt below and answer your partner's questions.



Which shop did you go to?

I went to Mega Fashion Store.

# Reference

## Unit 1 Container words

- a **litre** of (water/orange juice)
- a **kilo** of (cheese/rice)
- a **bottle** of (water/lemonade)
- a **tin** of (fish/soup)
- a **spoonful** of (sugar/salt)
- a **tube** of (toothpaste/glue)
- a **cup** of (coffee/tea)
- a **jar** of (jam/honey)
- a **slice** of (bread/cake)
- a **bag** of (crisps/flour)
- a **packet** of (biscuits/crisps)
- a **carton** of (milk/juice)
- a **box** of (chocolates/eggs)
- a **bunch** of (grapes/bananas)

## Unit 6 Present simple

| Affirmative                                                                    |                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I/you/we/they <b>eat</b><br>he/she/it <b>eats</b>                              |                                                                                    |
| Negative                                                                       |                                                                                    |
| I/you/we/they <b>don't eat</b><br>he/she/it <b>doesn't eat</b>                 |                                                                                    |
| Questions                                                                      |                                                                                    |
| <b>Do</b> I/you/we/they <b>eat</b> ?<br><b>Does</b> he/she/it <b>eat</b> ?     |                                                                                    |
| Short answers                                                                  |                                                                                    |
| <b>Yes</b> , I/you/we/they <b>do</b> .<br><b>Yes</b> , he/she/it <b>does</b> . | <b>No</b> , I/you/we/they <b>don't</b> .<br><b>No</b> , he/she/it <b>doesn't</b> . |

| Spelling rules: <i>he / she / it</i> form       |        |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| most verbs                                      | + -s   | eat → eats<br>play → plays           |
| ending in <i>-ch, -o, -sh, -ss</i> or <i>-x</i> | + -es  | finish → finishes<br>relax → relaxes |
| ending in consonant + <i>-y</i>                 | → -ies | carry → carries<br>try → tries       |
| <i>have</i>                                     |        | <b>has</b>                           |

## Present continuous

| Affirmative                                                                                               |                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I'm <b>eating</b><br>you/we/they're <b>eating</b><br>he/she/it's <b>eating</b>                            |                                                                                                                 |
| Negative                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                 |
| I'm <b>not eating</b><br>you/we/they <b>aren't eating</b><br>he/she/it <b>isn't eating</b>                |                                                                                                                 |
| Questions                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Am I eating?</b><br><b>Are</b> you/we/they <b>eating</b> ?<br><b>Is</b> he/she/it <b>eating</b> ?      |                                                                                                                 |
| Short answers                                                                                             |                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Yes</b> , I <b>am</b> .<br><b>Yes</b> , you/we/they <b>are</b> .<br><b>Yes</b> , he/she/it <b>is</b> . | <b>No</b> , I'm <b>not</b> .<br><b>No</b> , you/we/they <b>aren't</b> .<br><b>No</b> , he/she/it <b>isn't</b> . |

| Spelling rules: <i>-ing</i> form                                 |                            |                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| most verbs                                                       | + -ing                     | eat → eating<br>watch → watching     |
| ending in <i>-e</i>                                              | e<br>+ -ing                | write → writing<br>have → having     |
| ending in <i>-ie</i>                                             | → -ying                    | lie → lying<br>die → dying           |
| ending in one stressed vowel + one consonant                     | double consonant<br>+ -ing | shop → shopping<br>begin → beginning |
| if the vowel is unstressed or the consonant is <i>w, x, y...</i> | don't double consonant     | listen → listening<br>play → playing |

## Unit 7 Past simple

| Affirmative                                                   |                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| I/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>played</b>                         |                                                                 |
| Negative                                                      |                                                                 |
| I/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>didn't play</b>                    |                                                                 |
| Questions                                                     |                                                                 |
| <b>Did</b> I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>play</b> ?  |                                                                 |
| Short answers                                                 |                                                                 |
| <b>Yes</b> , I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>did</b> . | <b>No</b> , I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>didn't</b> . |

## Past simple: *be*

| Affirmative       |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| I / he / she / it | <b>was</b>  |
| you / we / they   | <b>were</b> |

| Negative          |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| I / he / she / it | <b>wasn't</b>  |
| you / we / they   | <b>weren't</b> |

| Questions                                                                                    |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Was</b>                                                                                   | I / he / she / it ...?                                                                             |
| <b>Were</b>                                                                                  | you / we / they ...?                                                                               |
| Short answers                                                                                |                                                                                                    |
| <b>Yes</b> , I was.<br><b>Yes</b> , you / we / they were.<br><b>Yes</b> , he / she / it was. | <b>No</b> , I wasn't.<br><b>No</b> , you / we / they weren't.<br><b>No</b> , he / she / it wasn't. |

## Unit 8 Past continuous

| Affirmative                                                                                              |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>I was singing</b><br>you / we / they <b>were singing</b><br>he / she / it <b>was singing</b>          |                                                                                                    |
| Negative                                                                                                 |                                                                                                    |
| <b>I wasn't singing</b><br>you / we / they <b>weren't singing</b><br>he / she / it <b>wasn't singing</b> |                                                                                                    |
| Questions                                                                                                |                                                                                                    |
| <b>Was</b> I singing?<br><b>Were</b> you / we / they singing?<br><b>Was</b> he / she / it singing?       |                                                                                                    |
| Short answers                                                                                            |                                                                                                    |
| <b>Yes</b> , I was.<br><b>Yes</b> , you / we / they were.<br><b>Yes</b> , he / she / it was.             | <b>No</b> , I wasn't.<br><b>No</b> , you / we / they weren't.<br><b>No</b> , he / she / it wasn't. |

For the spelling rules of the **-ing** form, see page 173.

## Unit 9 Present perfect

|                                                                                           | regular                                                                                       | irregular       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Affirmative                                                                               |                                                                                               |                 |
| I / you / we / they've<br>he / she / it's                                                 | <b>worked</b>                                                                                 | <b>written</b>  |
| Negative                                                                                  |                                                                                               |                 |
| I / you / we / they haven't<br>he / she / it hasn't                                       | <b>worked</b>                                                                                 | <b>written</b>  |
| Questions                                                                                 |                                                                                               |                 |
| <b>Have</b> I / you / we / they<br><b>Has</b> he / she / it                               | <b>worked?</b>                                                                                | <b>written?</b> |
| Short answers                                                                             |                                                                                               |                 |
| <b>Yes</b> , I / you / we / they <b>have</b> .<br><b>Yes</b> , he / she / it <b>has</b> . | <b>No</b> , I / you / we / they <b>haven't</b> .<br><b>No</b> , he / she / it <b>hasn't</b> . |                 |

Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the past simple **-ed** form. For spelling rules of regular **-ed** forms, see Unit 7 page 35.

There are no rules for irregular past participles. They are often different from the past simple form. You must learn each one individually. See the list on page 176.

## Unit 11 Past perfect

We form the past perfect with **had** + past participle.

|                                                       | regular                                                 | irregular       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Affirmative</b>                                    |                                                         |                 |
| <b>Full form</b>                                      | <b>worked</b>                                           | <b>written</b>  |
| I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>had</b>        |                                                         |                 |
| <b>Short form</b>                                     | <b>worked</b>                                           | <b>written</b>  |
| I / you / he / she / it / we / they'd                 |                                                         |                 |
| <b>Negative</b>                                       |                                                         |                 |
| I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>hadn't</b>     | <b>worked</b>                                           | <b>written</b>  |
| <b>Questions</b>                                      |                                                         |                 |
| <b>Had</b> I / you / he / she / it / we / they        | <b>worked?</b>                                          | <b>written?</b> |
| <b>Short answers</b>                                  |                                                         |                 |
| Yes, I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>had</b> . | No, I / you / he / she / it / we / they <b>hadn't</b> . |                 |

## Unit 24 Comparison: adjectives

|                                                                                                     | Adjective          | Comparative                            | Superlative                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| one syllable ending in consonant                                                                    | small              | smaller                                | the smallest                                       |
| one syllable ending in -e                                                                           | nice               | nicer                                  | the nicest                                         |
| one syllable ending in vowel + consonant                                                            | big                | bigger                                 | the biggest                                        |
| Note: Adjectives ending in -w don't double the consonant: <b>new</b> – <b>newer</b> – <b>newest</b> |                    |                                        |                                                    |
| ending in -y                                                                                        | easy               | easier                                 | the easiest                                        |
| two or more syllables                                                                               | famous             | more famous                            | the most famous                                    |
| irregular                                                                                           | good<br>bad<br>far | better<br>worse<br>farther/<br>further | the best<br>the worst<br>the farthest/<br>furthest |



## Irregular verb list

| Infinitive | Past simple | Past participle | Infinitive | Past simple | Past participle |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| be         | was         | been            | lose       | lost        | lost            |
| become     | became      | become          | make       | made        | made            |
| begin      | began       | begun           | meet       | met         | met             |
| break      | broke       | broken          | pay        | paid        | paid            |
| bring      | brought     | brought         | put        | put         | put             |
| build      | built       | built           | read       | read        | read            |
| buy        | bought      | bought          | run        | ran         | run             |
| catch      | caught      | caught          | say        | said        | said            |
| come       | came        | come            | see        | saw         | seen            |
| choose     | chose       | chosen          | send       | sent        | sent            |
| cost       | cost        | cost            | sing       | sang        | sung            |
| do         | did         | done            | sit        | sat         | sat             |
| drink      | drank       | drunk           | sleep      | slept       | slept           |
| drive      | drove       | driven          | speak      | spoke       | spoken          |
| eat        | ate         | eaten           | spend      | spent       | spent           |
| fall       | fell        | fallen          | stand      | stood       | stood           |
| feel       | felt        | felt            | swim       | swam        | swum            |
| find       | found       | found           | teach      | taught      | taught          |
| fly        | flew        | flown           | take       | took        | taken           |
| forget     | forgot      | forgotten       | tell       | told        | told            |
| get        | got         | got             | think      | thought     | thought         |
| give       | gave        | given           | understand | understood  | understood      |
| go         | went        | gone, been      | wake       | woke        | woken           |
| have       | had         | had             | wear       | wore        | worn            |
| hear       | heard       | heard           | win        | won         | won             |
| know       | knew        | known           | write      | wrote       | written         |
| leave      | left        | left            |            |             |                 |